fi-6140/fi-6240
fi-6130/fi-6230
Image Scanner
fi-614PR, Imprinter
Maintenance Manual



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	n Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Page	1	/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada CH	HECK 1	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	1	. 1231

Revisio	n Record	
Edition	Date published	Revised contents
01	July 27, 2007	First version released
02	August 31, 2007	47, 48: Error Recovery Guide messages added.
	,	77, 106-107, 114: Replacement procedure changed.
03	September 20, 2007	78, 122, 128, 171: Photos changed.
		93: Reference step changed.
04	November 14, 2007	fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614PR added.
	,	P30, 44: Maintenance parts numbers revised.
		P12, 13: Specification revised.
		Chapter 5 and Section 8-6: Screw classification added.
05	December 18, 2007	P110: Tension when the spring balance touches the rib revised.
03	December 18, 2007	P226: Tips for removing the inner cover added.
		P233-234: LF Motor belt tension adjustment procedure revised.
		P253-254: Screw specifications added.
06	March 10, 2008	P49, 68: "J0" error added.
		Section 1-1-2: Minimum document (A8) size changed.
07	NI 12 2000	Section 4-3-11: Procedures on "Vertical straight streaks appear in scanned image" added.
07	November 12, 2008	Section 5-3-4: Procedure for cleaning "Glass inside of Flatbed" changed.
		Appendix 2: Emulation mode" added.
		Section 4-3-23 (P61): Troubleshooting for "F4: Background changeover unit alarm" revised.
08	July 27, 2009	Section 5-9-5 (P95): Notes on US Sensor FX installation added.
		Section 6-1, 6-1-5 (P156, 167): Notes on Maintenance mode (white level adjustment) added.

The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

All rights reserved. Copyright© PFU LIMITED 2007-2009

									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	i I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ice Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	2	/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage		1231

Preface

This manual provides the technical information such as maintenance, troubleshooting procedure and parts replacement procedure for field Engineers on fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230 image scanner.

This manual is for use as a maintenance tool only.

For information that is not contained in this manual, refer to the following manuals:

Item	Manuals	P/N *	Remarks
1	fi-6140/fi-6240 Image Scanner Operator's Guide	P3PC-2062-xxEN	Attached to fi-6140/fi-6240 (CD-ROM)
2	fi-6140/fi-6240 Image Scanner Getting Started	P3PC-2052-xxEN	Attached to fi-6140/fi-6240 (booklet)
3	fi-6130/fi-6230 Image Scanner Operator's Guide	P3PC-2162-xxEN	Attached to fi-6130/fi-6230 (CD-ROM)
4	fi-6130/fi-6230 Image Scanner Getting Started	P3PC-2152-xxEN	Attached to fi-6130/fi-6230 (booklet)
5	fi-614PR Imprinter Operator's Guide	P3PC-2112-xxEN	Attached to fi-614PR (CD-ROM)
6	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614PR	P4PA03540-B0XX/6	
	Illustrated Parts Catalog		

^{*} xx represents revision number of the manuals.

Convention

Special information, such as warnings, cautions, is indicated as follows:



This indication alerts operators to an operation that, if not strictly observed, may result in severe injury or death.

CAUTION

This indication alerts operators to an operation that, if not strictly observed, may result in safety hazards to personnel or damage to equipment.

NOTICE

NOTICE provides 'how-to" tips or suggestions to help you perform a procedure correctly.

General note:

Be careful not to power off the scanner while communicating with the host computer. In case that the scanner is accidentally powered off during communication with the host, follow the procedure below:

- 1. Power off the host computer
- 2. Power on the scanner.
- 3. Power on the host computer.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujio	oka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi Maintenance Manual			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujio	oka	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA035	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujio	oka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	GΝ	CHE	CK	APPF	₹.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	2	/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.C)kada	CH	HECK	K.Ok	kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 3/2				1231

Trademarks

Microsoft, Windows, and Windows NT are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries

ISIS, QuickScan and their respective logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pixel Translations, a division of Captiva Software Corporation in the United States.

Adobe, the Adobe logo, and Acrobat are either registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Other product names are the trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

How Trademarks are Indicated in This Manual

References to operating systems (OS) and applications are indicated as follows:

Windows 2000: Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

Windows XP: Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system (32-bit/64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

Windows Server2003: Microsoft® Windows ServerTM 2003 Standard Edition operating system (32-bit/64-bit)

Windows Vista: Microsoft® Windows VistaTM Home Basic operating system (32-bit/64-bit)

Microsoft® Windows VistaTM Home Premium operating system (32-bit/64-bit)

 $Microsoft^{\mathbb{R}}$ Windows $Vista^{TM}$ Business operating system (32-bit/64-bit)

Microsoft® Windows VistaTM Enterprise operating system (32-bit/64-bit)

Microsoft® Windows VistaTM Ultimate operating system (32-bit/64-bit)

Where there is no distinction between the different versions of the above operating system, the general term "Windows" is used.

								TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to Revis	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. Maintenance Manu				nual		
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Revis	sion Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Revis	sion Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTIO	ON		DELL	LIMITED	Page	1	/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK K	Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	4	1231

Contents

Cha	pter 1	Overvi	ew	•••••	•••••	••••••	•••••	•••••	••••••	••••••	•••••	•••••	10
1-1	Specif	fication											10
1	-1-1 Fea	tures											10
1	-1-2 Sca	nner Speci	fications										11
1	-1-3 Env	ironmenta	1 Specificat	tions									12
1	-1-4 App	pearance											13
1	-1-5 Out	ter Dimensi	ions										16
1	-1-6 Do	cument Spe	ecifications										17
1	-1-7 Mu	lti feed Det	tection Cor	ndition									18
		_	•										
		•											
1	-2-4 Ele	ctric Comp	onent Bloc	ck Diagrai	n								24
Cha	pter 2	Descri	ption of	Scann	er Op	eratio	n	•••••	•••••	••••••	•••••	•••••	25
2-1	Unpa	cking the	scanner										25
2-2	Install	ling the so	canner										27
2	-2-1 For	safety inst	allation										27
2	-2-2 Inst	tallation					•••••		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •				27
Cha	pter 3	Mainte	enance I	Parts	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	••••••	•••••	•••••	29
3-1	BASE	E UNIT											31
3-2	BASE	E ASSY											31
3-3	INVE	RTER											32
3-4	LAM	P											32
3-5	US SI	ENSOR F	X (Multi	feed dete	ection)								33
3-6	OPT U	JNIT											33
3-7	BW N	OTOR											34
3-8													
3-9	PICK	MOTOR	ASSY										35
3-1													
3-1													
3-1					,								
3-1													
3-1													
3-1													
3-1													
3-1	,	,											
3-1	,	,											
3-1						,							
3-2													
3-2													
-													
3-2													
3-2	`	/											
3-2													
3-2 3-2					-								
3-2													
	GUIDE P ASSY (Sheet Guide) 34												
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.					
	Nov.12, 08		T.Anzai	I.Fujioka					DRAW	D4D 4 005	40 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer	to Revision			No.	PTPAU35	4U-DUX	.∧/b	
Rev.	DATE	lly 27, 09 K.Okada A.Miyoshi I.Fujioka Refer to Revision Record on page 2. ov.12, 08 K.Okada T.Anzai I.Fujioka Refer to Revision Record on page 2. ar.10, 08 K.Okada T.Anzai I.Fujioka Refer to Revision Record on page 2. BRAW No. P1PA03540-B0XX/6											
Desigr	1 July 27	DATE DESIGN CHECK APPR. DESCRIPTION DELLIMITED Page											

3-29													
3-30													
3-31													
3-32													
3-33													
3-34													
3-35		,											
3-36		,											
3-37													
3-38													
3-39													
6-40	(Rese	erved)		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •									46
Chap	ter 4	Troubl	eshootii	ng	••••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	••••••	•••••	•••••	47
							-						
		_											
		_											
		_					_						
		-		_			-						
		_	-			_				•••••			
		•					_			•••••			
					_								
			_	~									
			11 0										
			-										
_		•	•										
_													
_													
_		_	2										
_		_	_										
_													
_													
_													
4-3													
4-3													
4-3	-30 "A	bnormal co	ommand"										64
4-3													
4-3										fi-6130			
							_			0/fi-6130			
4-3													
4-3		_				_							
ı					1					E 64 40/E 00 11	N: C400"		NG C4 45
00 .	h. 07. 00	I/ Olar da	A N 45 L .	I Distriction	D-f	to Devident	Docard	nog- 0	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenar			#II-014P
	uly 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi T.Anzai	I.Fujioka		to Revision			DBAW				CHET
	ov.12, 08 lar.10, 08	K.Okada K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka I.Fujioka		to Revision to Revision			DRAW No.	P1PA035	40-B0X	X/6	CUST.
	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.		RIPTION		. pago 2.			Poss		
		2007 K.C					APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU	LIMITED	Page	6	5/257

4-3-36 "H6: Imprinter fuse blown" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130					
4-3-37 "A0: Imprinter control board alarm" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140)/fi-6130				66
"A1: Imprinter communication timeout" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6					
"A2: Ink head alarm" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130					
"A3: Imprinter EEPROM alarm" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130					
"A4: Imprinter ROM alarm" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130					
4-3-38 No printing / Printed letters are distorted (with Imprinter installed) (fi-64-3-39) Print form is dirty (with Imprinter installed) (fi-6140/fi-6130)					
4-3-40 Printing is interrupted in process (with Imprinter installed) [i-6140/ii-6130]					
4-3-41 Frequent "J0: paper jam" (paper protection function) fi-6140/fi-6240					
Chapter 5 Disassembly/Assembly					
5-1 For the safety operation					
5-2 Periodic Maintenance					
5-3 Cleaning					
5-3-2 Glass inside of Base Unit					
5-3-3 Glass inside of Upper Unit					
5-3-4 Glass inside of Flatbed fi-6240/fi-6230					
5-3-5 White reference inside of Base Unit					
5-3-6 White reference inside of Upper Unit					72
5-4 Maintenance tool					
5-5 Parts that should not be Disassembled					
5-6 (Reserved)					74
5-7 Removing Flatbed fi-6240/fi-6230					75
5-8 Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute), Stacker Unit					
5-8-1 Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute), Stacker Offit					
5-8-2 Stacker Unit fi-6140/fi-6130					
5-9 Base Unit					
5-9-1 Base Unit					
5-9-2 Base ASSY					84
5-9-3 Inverter (for front side scanning)					
5-9-4 Lamp (for front side scanning)					
5-9-5 US Sensor FX (Multifeed detection)					
5-9-6 OPT Unit (for front side scanning)					
5-9-7 BW Motor				•••••	98
5-9-8 Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide)					
5-9-9 PICK Motor ASSY					
5-9-11 PICK Shaft ASSY					
5-9-12 Switch (ADF open detection)					
5-10 Upper Unit					
5-10-1 Upper Unit					
5-10-2 Upper ASSY					
5-10-3 ADF Motor					
5-10-4 OPT Unit (for backside scanning)					112
5-10-5 Inverter (for backside scanning)					114
5-10-6 Lamp (for backside scanning)					116
5-10-7 US Sensor RV (Multifeed detection)					
5-10-8 Sensor EMP (Paper empty detection)					
5-10-9 Panel PCA					
5-10-10 BR Shaft ASSY					
5-10-11 Top Cover					
J-11 COHOUTCA					130
	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/f			/fi-614P
08 July 27, 09 K.Okada A.Miyoshi I.Fujioka Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		Maintenand	e Man	ual	0 : ::==
07 Nov.12, 08 K.Okada T.Anzai I.Fujioka Refer to Revision Record on page 2. 06 Mar.10, 08 K.Okada T.Anzai I.Fujioka Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW No.	P1PA0354	0-B0X)	K/6	CUST.
Rev. DATE DESIGN CHECK APPR. DESCRIPTION		IMITED	Dogo		1257
Design July 27, 2007 K.Okada CHECK K.Okada APPR. T.Anzai	PFU	LIMITED	Page	/.	/257

Cha	pter (6 Adjust	ment/Se	ettings	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	156
6-1	Ma	intenance m	ode										156
6	-1-2	Maintenance r	node #1: P	aper feedii	ng / Se	nsor / Bac	kground	changeove	er test				158
6	-1-3	Maintenance r	node #2: M	lain scann	ing / Si	ıb-scanni	ng magni	fication ad	justmen	t			160
6	-1-5	Maintenance r	node #4: W	hite level	adjust	ment							167
6-2	Sav	ing EEPRO	M data										175
Cha	pter '	7 Basic (Operatio	on and l	Daily	Care.	•••••	•••••	•••••	••••••	•••••	•••••	177
7-1	Bas	sic Operation	n										177
7	-1-1	Γurn ON/OFF	the Scanne	er									177
7	-1-2	Loading Docu	ments on the	he ADF fo	r Scan	ning		<u></u>					178
7	-1-3	Loading Docu	ments on tl	he Flatbed	for Sc	anning	fi-6240/fi	-6230					181
7-2	Dai	ly Care			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •								182
	-	_											
		_	_										
	•	•	` •	•									
		-											
			-										
8-1		• •											
_													
			-										
			_										
		_	-										
		-	-										
		-											
				-									
8	-4-3	MP JNT											208
										fi-6140/fi-6240	/fi-6130/	fi-6230)/fi-614P
08	July 27	203											
									DRAW	D4D 4025	40 DAY	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10,	08 K.Okada		I.Fujioka			Record on	page 2.	No.	r iraus5	4 0-DUX	W0	
Rev. Desigr	DATE		CHECK Okada CH	APPR. IECK K.(DESC Okada	RIPTION	APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU	LIMITED	Page	8	3/257
PESIGI	. I July	_1, _UU1 I\.	JINGUA UF		unaua	1	LALI IV.	1./NIZal	L		i	1	

8-4-4 PR HARNESS	208
8-4-5 IM FELT	
8-4-6 LF MOTOR	
8-4-7 IM HOLDER ASSY3	
8-4-8 IM HOLD LEVER3	
8-4-9 FPC CABLE	21
8-4-10 IM PINCH ASSY3	211
8-4-11 IM LOCK LEVER	
8-4-12 SWITCH (Cover open detection)	
8-4-13 GUIDE SHEET	213
8-4-14 PAPER GUIDE3	213
8-5 Troubleshooting	214
8-6 Disassembly/Assembly	
8-6-1 For Safety operation	
8-6-2 Maintenance tool	
8-6-3 (Reserved)	
8-6-4 Removing Imprinter	216
8-6-5 IM HOLD LEVER3	217
8-6-6 IM PINCH ASSY3	218
8-6-7 IMP JNT	
8-6-8 IM HOLDER ASSY3/FPC CABLE	
8-6-9 IMP CT	
8-6-10 SENSOR	
8-6-11 SWITCH (Cover open detection)	
8-6-12 LF MOTOR	
8-6-13 PR HARNESS	
8-6-14 IM FELT	
8-6-15 IM LOCK LEVER	
8-6-16 GUIDE SHEET	239
8-7 Adjustment/Settings	240
8-8 Basic Operation and Daily Care of the Imprinter	241
8-8-1 Setting The Print Position	241
8-8-2 How to Use the Paper Guides	
8-8-3 Print Setup	
8-8-4 Removing Jammed Documents	247
8-9 Cleaning and Consumables	248
8-9-1 Cleaning the Print Cartridge	
8-9-2 Cleaning the Imprinter	
8-9-3 Cleaning the Imprinter Rollers	
8-9-4 Replacing the Print Cartridge	
Appendix 1 Screws	253
Appendix 2 Emulation Mode	255

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPE	R. DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	0	/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	9	1231

Section 1-1

Chapter 1 Overview

1-1 Specification

1-1-1 Features

The fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230 (hereinafter called "the scanner") offers high-speed color/gray/monochrome scanning with 600 dpi of optical resolution, up to A4 size (Legal size for ADF). It supports two interfaces, SCSI interface and USB interface, either of which can be used at a time.

The following points have been improved for the scanner compared to the previous type (fi-5120C/fi-5220C).

(1) Improvement of color scanning speed

By changing the CCD, color scanning speed (A4 Portrait 300dpi) is improved from 30 ppm to 40 ppm.

(2) Ultrasonic multi feed sensor

As with the previous model, the scanner introduces ultrasonic sensor in order to perform very reliable multi feed detection.

(3) Prevention of image chipping at overscan

Increasing the number of CCD pixels enables to extend overscan width, so that the image will not be chipped even when the document is skewed.

(4) Thicker card transportation

Feeding thick cards up to 1.4mm thick (including emboss) is available by improving the ADF transportation path.

(5) Specified number of scanned pages ejected to the stacker Pre-pick is operable when the number of documents to be scanned is specified.

fi-6140/fi-6130

An exclusive imprinter (fi-614PR, option) can be installed under fi-6140/fi-6130 as shown in the photo below. See Chapter 8 for the details of the imprinter.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okac	da A.Miy	yoshi	I.Fujio	oka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okac	la T.Aı	nzai	I.Fujio	oka R	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				DRAW	P1PA035	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okac	da T.Ai	nzai	I.Fujio	oka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	MO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK	APPF	R. D	DESCRIPTION				DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	16)/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Okada	Cl	IECK	K.Oka	ada APPR. T.Anzai PFU LIIVI					Page	10	11 431	

1-1-2 Scanner Specifications

1-1-2	Scan	ner Specificat	1101	15	Specif	ications						
No.		Items		fi-6140	fi-6130	fi-6240	fi-6230					
1	Ope	rating method		Automatic Documer		Automatic Document						
2	Onti	cal resolution		600 dpi	· · · · ·	Flatbed (FB)						
	Ори	carresolution		•	(unit: 1dpi), 1200dpi (t	w driver)						
3	Outp	out resolution		Gray: 50 – 600 dpi (Color: 50 – 600 dpi	unit: 1dpi), 1200dpi (by (unit: 1dpi), 1200dpi (b	y driver) y driver)						
4	Bit	lepth		Gray 8 bit/pixel, 4 b Binary 1 bit	bit/pixel (by driver), 4 it/pixel (by driver)	bit/pixel (by driver)						
				Simplex/Duplex	Simplex/Duplex	Simplex/Duplex	Simplex/Duplex					
5		Scanning speed (Engine speed)	Binary	60 ppm / 120 ipm	40 ppm / 80 ipm 05	60 ppm / 120 ipm	40 ppm / 80 ipm 05					
		@A4, 200dpi	Color	40 ppm / 80 ipm	30 ppm / 60 ipm	40 ppm / 80 ipm	30 ppm / 60 ipm					
6		Document size		Max: A4 (210 x 297 mm) or Legal (216 x 355.6 mm / 8.50 x 14 in.) Up to 3045 3048 mm (120 in.) of long page scanning is available. Min: A8 (53 52 x 74 mm) Portrait / Landscape 07								
7	ADF	Paper weight		0.05 ~ 0.26 mm (41 A8 size: 0.15 ~ 0.26	$\sim 210 \text{ g/m}^2$, 9.4 $\sim 56 \text{ lb}$ mm (127 $\sim 210 \text{ g/m}^2$)							
8		Card transport		Available, Portrait/Landscape feeding, Continuous feeding (up to 3 sheets of continuous feeding) Thickness: 1.4mm or less (fi-6140/fi-6240 models: Monochrome, 200dpi or smaller, Landscape, Card thickness: 1.25mm or smaller) OS								
9		Capacity of AD	F	50 sheets @ A4, 80g/m ² or 20lb								
10		Background		Selectable (black or	white)							
11			ed		d paper detection sensong and document length							
12		Document size				Maximum: 216 x 297r	nm / 8.5 x 11.7 in.					
13		Scanning time				Binary/Gray/Color: ap @A4 Portrait, 200dpi						
14	FB	background				White (Option: black)						
15	Scar	ning sensor		Color CCD x 2		Color CCD x 3						
16		it source		White cold cathode	discharge lamp x2	White cold cathode dis	scharge lamp x3					
17	Ŭ	face		Ultra SCSI (x1) USB 2.0 (x1)	USB 2.0 (x1)	Ultra SCSI (x1) USB 2.0 (x1)	USB 2.0 (x1)					
18	Image memory			256 MB	64 MB	256 MB	64 MB					
19	<u> </u>	ched driver			candAll PRO, Adobe A o (Trial), Image proces	Acrobat, sing software option (Tr	ial)					
20	Ope	rator panel		Buttons: Function, S	end to, Scan/Stop, Pow							
21	Supp	ported Options		fi-614PR Imprinter		Black document pad 05						
		-				Diack document pad 03						

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo:	shi I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE)/fi-614PR			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA035	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	K APP	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 11/2			1/23/	

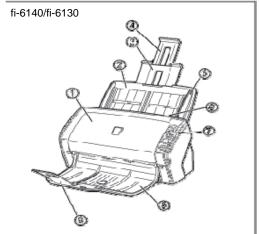
1-1-3 Environmental Specifications

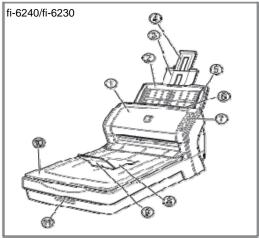
No.	14	tems		Specif	ications			
140.		leilis	fi-6140	fi-6130	fi-6240	fi-6230		
1	Input	Voltage		100 t	o 240V			
1	power	Frequency		50/0	60 Hz			
2		consumption ed power)	42 W or less	38 W or less	50 W or less	45W or less		
3	1	Noise		50 dB or less (exclu	iding operator's area)			
4	(Withou	dimensions at ADF paper I Stacker Unit)		(D) x 158 (H) mm (D) x 6.2 (H) inch	301 (W) x 567 (D) x 229 (H) mm 11.8 (W) x 22.3 (D) x 9.0 (H) inch			
5	V	Veight	4.2kg	(9.3 lb)	8.8kg (19.4 lb)			
6	Ambient	Temperature	5 to 35 °C / 41	to 95 °F (Operating) -2	20 to 60 °C / -4 to 140	°F (Not operating)		
0	condition	Humidity	20	to 80 % (Operating)	8 to 95 % (Not open	rating)		
7	Calorific value 05		36.2 kcal/H 37.7 kcal/H or less or less		43.0 kcal/H or less	38.7 kcal/H or less		
8	Weight	at shipping	6.	.5 kg	13.0 kg			

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi I	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE)/fi-614PR			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I.	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK A	APPR.	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1′	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 12/			21231	

1-1-4 Appearance

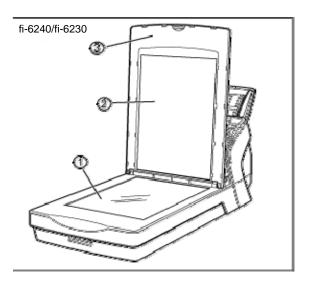
[Front]





No.	Parts name	Function					
1	ADF (Automatic Document Feeder)	Transports the documents to the reading position automatically.					
2	ADF Paper Chute (Chute Unit)						
3	Paper chute extension 1	Holds in place the document pages / sheets that are fed into the ADF.					
4	Paper chute extension 2						
5	Side Guide	Adjusted to the width of the paper in order not to scan skewed pages.					
6	ADF open lever	Pull this lever toward you to open the ADF.					
7	Operator Panel	This panel consists of a Function No. Display, four operating push buttons, and a LED.					
8	Stacker	Command documents are signed from the ADE onto this steeless					
9	Stacker extension	Scanned documents are ejected from the ADF onto this stacker.					
10	Flatbed (FB) [fi-6240/fi-6230 only]	Place documents on the glass sheet by sheet for single-sheet scanning.					
11	Transport lock switch [fi-6240/fi-6230 only]	Used to lock the carrier unit inside the flatbed during transportation.					

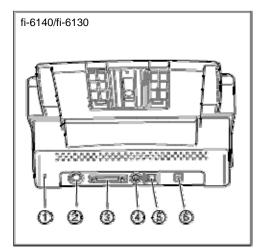
[Inside]

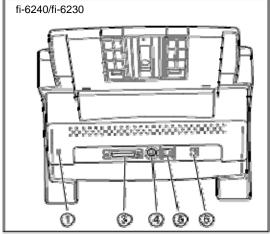


No.	Parts name	Function
1	Document bed	Place documents on the glass when scanning through the flatbed.
2	Document holding pad	Holds documents down on the document bed.
3	Document cover	Holds the document loaded at the reading position when closed.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	shi I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE)/fi-614PR			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	K APP	R. DESC	RIPTION	DELL			LIMITED	Page	13	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 13/2			51231	

[Rear]

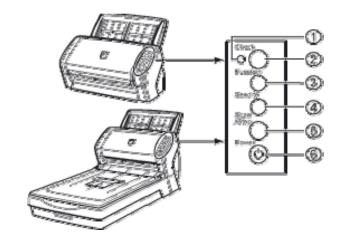




No.	Parts name	Function
1	Security sot	Attaches the antitheft chain
2	EXT connector (for imprinter)	Connects the cable from the Imprinter.
	[fi-6140/fi-6130 only]	
3	SCSI connector	Connects the SCSI interface cable from the host system.
4	SCSI ID switch	Sets the SCSI ID. (default setting: SCSI ID=5)
5	USB connector	Connects the USB cable from the host system.
6	DC inlet	Connects the AC Adapter.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	shi I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE)/fi-614PR			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	K APP	R. DESC	RIPTION	DEL			LIMITED	Page	1.	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 14/2			+/23/	

[Operator Panel]

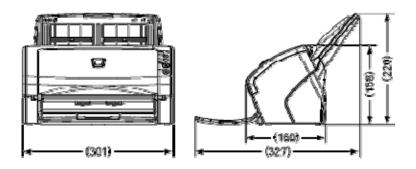


No.	Name	Function
2	Check LED	Lights when an error occurs.
1	Function Number Display	Indicates the function number and error status.
3	[Function] button	Changes the Function activated by the [Send to] button.
4	[Send to] button	Launches the linked application software. Resets an error.
	[Scan / Stop] button	Launches the linked application software.
5		Resets and error.
		Cancels ongoing scanning.
6	Power button / LED	Turns the scanner ON and OFF.
U		Lights when the scanner is turned ON.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	/fi-614PR			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK .	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	14	5/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 15/2			01231	

1-1-5 Outer Dimensions

fi-6140/fi-6130



fi-6240/fi-6230

(Unit: mm)

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	ni I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert					FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION						(1257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 16/25			01 431	

1-1-6 Document Specifications

- Document Type

The following paper types are recommended for document use:

- Woodfree paper
- Wood containing paper

When using documents of paper type other than the above, check whether or not the document can be scanned by test-scanning a few sheets before executing the actual document.

Any other paper types of documents can be scanned through the Flatbed.

- Document Thickness

Paper thickness is expressed by "paper weight". The following shows the paper weights that can be used on this scanner: $0.05\sim0.26$ mm, $41\sim210$ g/m²

Only paper weight of 127 to 210 g/m² is acceptable for A8-size documents.

- Precautions

The following documents may not be scanned successfully.

- Documents of non-uniform thickness (e.g. envelopes and photo-attached documents)
- Wrinkled or curled documents (See right figure)
- Folded or torn documents
- Tracing paper
- Coated paper
- Carbon paper
- Photosensitive paper
- Perforated documents
- Documents that are not square or rectangular
- Very thin documents
- Photographs

Do not use the following documents:

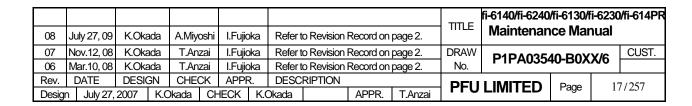
- Paper-clipped or stapled documents
- Documents on which the ink is still wet
- Documents smaller than A8 (Portrait) in size
- Documents wider than A4 or Letter size (216mm)
- Documents other than paper such as fabric, metal foil, or transparencies
- Important documents such as certificate and cash vouchers that must not get scratched or become smeared

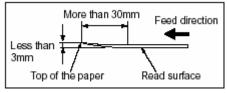
Note: - Carbonless paper contains chemical substances that may harm the Brake roller or paper feeding rollers (e.g. Pick roller) when documents are fed. Pay attention to the following:

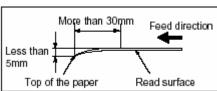
Cleaning: If document jams occur frequently, clean the Brake roller and the Pick roller, by referring Section 7-2-1.

Replacing parts: The service life of the Brake roller and the Pick roller may be shortened compared to that of the rollers used for scanning wood containing paper documents.

- If paper containing wood is scanned, the service life of the Brake roller and the Pick roller may become shorter than that of the rollers used for scanning only woodfree paper.
- The Brake roller or Pick rollers of the scanner could be damaged if photographs or sheets of paper attached to the scanned document have contact with the Brake or Pick rollers during scanning.
- Scanning documents of calendered paper such as photographs may damage the surface of them.







- Note: When scanning semi-transparent documents, slide the [Brightness] bar to light to avoid bleed through.
 - To prevent the rollers from becoming dirty, avoid scanning documents containing large areas written or filled in pencil. If scanning of such document is inevitable, clean the rollers more frequently.

1-1-7 Multi feed Detection Condition

One of the following method of multi feed detection is selected by the driver.

- Check overlapping
- Check length
- Check overlapping and length

The following condition is required for each selection:

1) Check overlapping

- Paper weight: 0.05 0.26 mm, $41 \sim 210$ g/m²
- Punched holes are not allowed within 35 mm (2.12 in) of the vertical centerline of the document.
- Other paper shall not be glued within 35 mm (2.12 in) of the vertical centerline of the document.

2) Check length

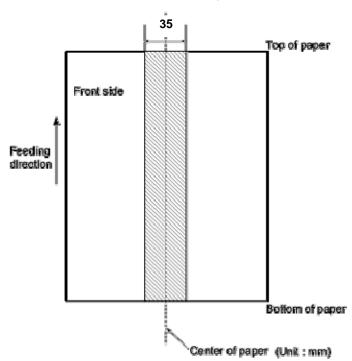
- Document length deviation: 1 % or less
- Punched holes are not allowed within 35 mm (2.12 in) of the vertical centerline of the document.

3) Check overlapping and length

- Paper weight: 0.05 0.26 mm, $41 \sim 210 \text{ g/m}^2$
- Document length deviation: 1 % or less
- Punched holes are not allowed within 35 mm (2.12 in) of the vertical centerline of the document.
- Other paper shall not be glued within 35 mm (2.12 in) of the vertical centerline of the document.

When the overlapping check is specified, the papers which contact closely each other, such as glued paper or electro-statically charged paper, can result in the miss-detection of multi feed.

Multifeed detection monitoring area



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyosh	ni I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	n page 2.					CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	nda	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refe					FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN (CHECK	APP	R. DES	CRIPTION			PFULIMITED Page 18/257			2 / 257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 18/25'			5/25/	

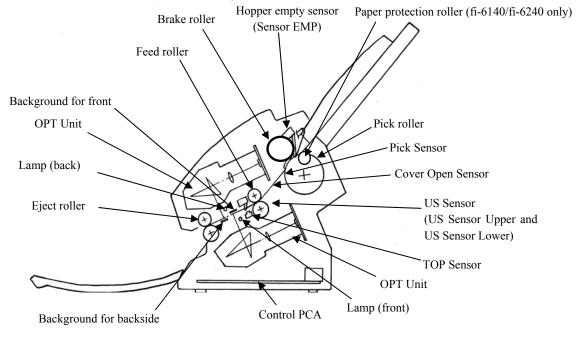
1-2 Scanner Configuration

1-2-1 **ADF** Unit

(1) Paper separation

When scanning with the ADF, documents loaded on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) are separated respectively by the Pick rollers and Brake rollers and fed into the ADF. Separated documents are transported by the feed rollers at the speed that corresponds to specified reading resolution until they are ejected to the stacker.

Paper feeding unit includes Hopper empty sensor (Sensor EMP), PICK sensor, TOP sensor, Multi feed sensor (US Sensor), Paper protection roller (fi-6140/fi-6240 only) and Cover Open Sensor.



(2) Consumables

The Pick roller and Brake roller are consumables and need to be replaced by a user. (Refer to Section 7-3 for detail.)

The scanner supports two consumable counters, Pick roller counter and Brake roller counter, which indicate the number of sheets that have been scanned so far. Users can check the counters from the driver screen or scanner built-in Maintenance mode, and reset the counter after replacing the consumables. (See Section 6-1-6 for details.)

(3) Drive unit

The Pick rollers are driven by the PICK Motor. The Brake rollers, Feed rollers, and Eject rollers are turned by the ADF Motor. The PICK Motor and ADF Motor are controlled separately. This can widen the gap between documents and extend the amount of overscan while overscanning.

The motor drive circuit and motor fuse are located in the Control PCA. If abnormal electric current runs through the motor drive circuit, the current is cut off by the motor fuse in the Control PCA.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. DRAW P1PA03540-B					10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert					FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 19/257) /257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 19/25			91231	

1-2-2 Reading Station

(1) ADF optical system

Documents are set in the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit) facing front side down. The front side of a document is scanned by the Optical Unit in the Base Unit, and the backside of a document is scanned by the Optical Unit in the Upper Unit. These two Optical Units have the same part number.

An image on a document is projected to a color CCD through lens and mirror system and converted to signals with 10 bit per pixel at 600 dpi resolution.

(2) FB optical system fi-6240/fi-6230

When FB scanning is specified, a document set on the document bed (glass) is scanned by the Optical Unit of the Carrier unit, which moves in the direction of sub scanning.

The Carrier unit also includes the Lamp and the Inverter to illuminate the document. The Optical Unit, Lamp and Inverter used in FB are the same type as those used in ADF.

(3) FB scanning control fi-6240/fi-6230

During initial processing immediately after power-on, the Carrier unit moves to the home position (the opposite side of ADF). When FB scanning is specified, the scanner moves the Carrier unit to scan the white reference in FB and then adjust the gain of CCD amplifier as a result of scanning the white reference. At that time, if the CCD output does not reach the standard level even after increasing the gain to the maximum level, an optical alarm occurs.

After successful gain adjustment, the scanner scans the specified length of the document while shifting the Carrier unit in the sub scanning direction at the speed that corresponds to the specified scanning resolution. If abnormal electric current runs through the FB Motor, the current is cut off by the motor fuse (the same type as that used in ADF) in Control PCA.

(4) Light source

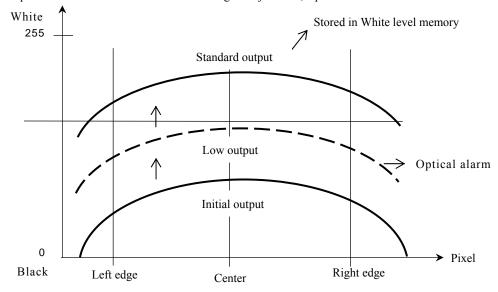
The scanner uses three Lamps (Incandescent fluorescent lamp) which illuminate the scanning areas in order to get sufficient CCD output. The Lamps are turned ON/OFF by the Inverters that are controlled by the Control PCA.

The life of a Lamp is about 10,000 hours, which means the Lamp lasts during the life of device and is not a consumable.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6					VIC	CUST.	
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	1 0				FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 20/257			1/257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 20/2)1231	

(5) Scan controller

Before scanning a document, the scanner scans white background of the scanning area and adjusts the gain of CCD amplifier. If the CCD output does not reach a certain level after the gain adjustment, Optical alarm is issued.



When the gain adjustment completes successfully, the scanner feeds the document to the scanning area at the speed that corresponds to specified scanning resolution. Then the leading edge of the document is detected by the TOP sensor in front of the scanning area. After the document is fed from TOP sensor by some defined length for front and back side scanning (the length which determines sub-scanning offset), the scanner starts scanning the image. The scanner terminates scan operation when the length specified from the host is scanned (Fixed size scanning) or when the TOP sensor detects the trailing edge of a document (Page end detection scanning).

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6					VIC	CUST.	
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	1 6				FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 21/257			1 /257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 21/25			1/23/	

1-2-3 Controller

(1) Control PCA

Control PCA controls the units shown in the figure below. It includes the following connectors and a switch.

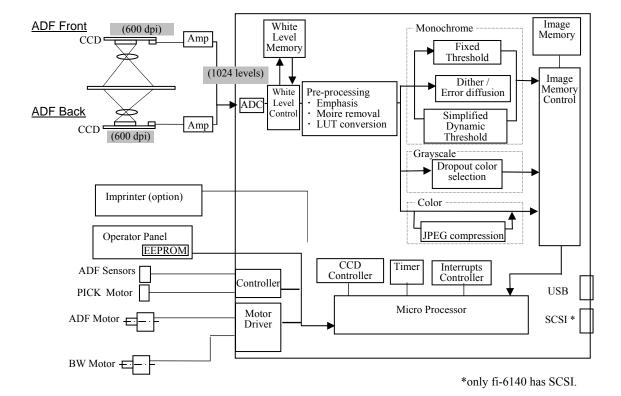
- SCSI connector (fi-6140/fi-6240 only)
- USB connector
- DC voltage input connector
- SCSI ID setting rotary switch

If both SCSI and USB cables are connected,

- SCSI is selected when selection phase is recognized first.
- USB is selected when H level VBUS signal is detected first.

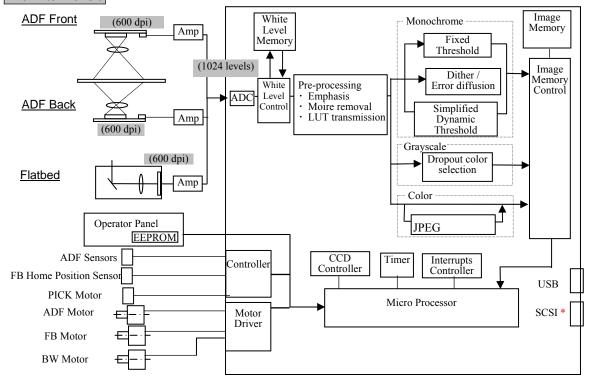
The firmware can be updated through a SCSI/USB interface using firmware update tool.

fi-6140/fi-6130



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenar)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	→ P1PΔU354U-BUXX/h				CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	ord on page 2. No. P1PA03540-B0XX/6					
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	ЭΝ	CHE	CK	APPF	R. [DESC	RIPTION			PFULIMITED Page 22/257			1257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.C	Okada	CH	HECK	K.Ok	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 22/257			21231	

fi-6240/fi-6230



*only fi-6240 has SCSI.

(2) Panel PCA

The Panel PCA in operator panel includes not only the switch and operator panel described in Section 1-1-4, but also EEPROM that records the information below. When replacing the Panel PCA with new one, you need to move all data stored in the EEPROM to the Control PCA, and then return the data from the Control PCA to the new Panel PCA.

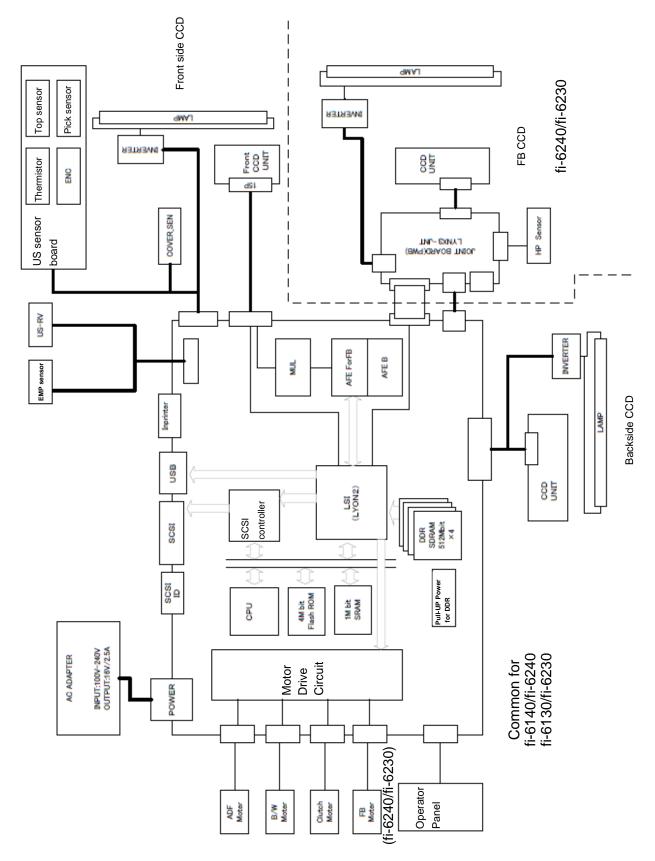
- Magnification correction value for main/sub scanning direction
- Offset correction value for main/sub scanning direction
- White level correction value
- Values of Brake roller counter and Pick roller counter
- First date of the scanner operation, ADF scanned number of documents

(3) Joint PCA fi-6240/fi-6230

This is a PCA installed in carrier unit (a unit including Optical Unit, Lamp, Lamp Inverter) of flatbed and used to convert the connector interface among CR Cable, the cable from Optical Unit and Lamp Inverter.

								TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to Rev	vision Record on p	page 2.	IIILL	Ivialitieriarice iviariuai			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Rev	vision Record on p	oage 2.	─				CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Rev	vision Record on p	oage 2.	No. P1PA03540-B0XX/6				
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPT	ION					3 / 257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK K.	K.Okada APPR. T.Anzai		FFU		raye	23	01431	

1-2-4 Electric Component Block Diagram



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	→ P1PΔU354U-BUX X/b				CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refert				No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 24/2:			1/257	
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ררט		Page	22	+/23/

Chapter 2 Description of Scanner Operation

2-1 Unpacking the scanner

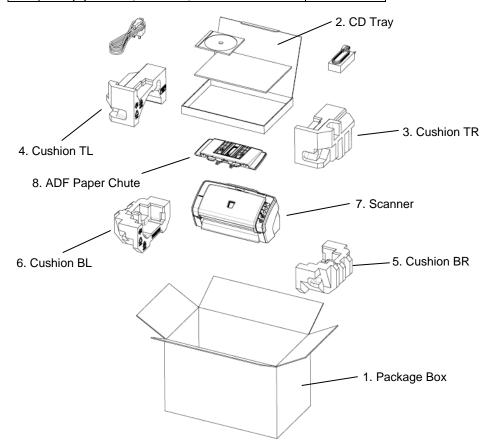
Follow the procedure below to unpack the scanner package. Make sure that all the accessories are included in the package.

- 1. Remove the tape to open the package box.
- 2. Take out the CD tray and other accessories.
- 3. Take out the scanner and cushions. And remove the cushioning materials.
- 4. Open the polyethylene bag to take out the scanner.
- 5. Take out all the accessories and remove the tape protecting the scanner.

The following table lists the packaging configuration.

fi-6140/fi-6130

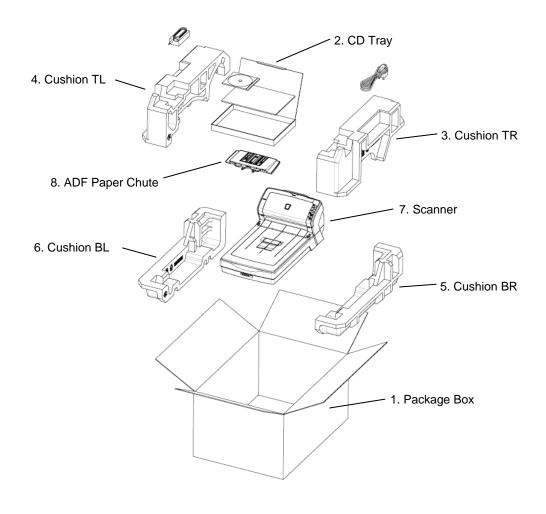
No.	Items	Quantity
1	Package box	1
2	CD tray (including accessories)	1
3	Cushion TR	1
4	Cushion TL	1
5	Cushion BR	1
6	Cushion BL	1
7	Scanner in Polyethylene bag	1
8	ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) and other accessories	1



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	ni I.Fujic	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	1 0				FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	25	5/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K	.Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	2.	01231

fi-6240/fi-6230

No.	Items	Quantity
1	Package box	1
2	CD tray (including accessories)	1
3	Cushion TR	1
4	Cushion TL	1
5	Cushion BR	1
6	Cushion BL	1
7	Scanner in Polyethylene bag	1
8	ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) and other accessories	1



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	da A	A.Miyos	shi I.Fu	ujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	da	T.Anza	ai I.Fu	ujioka	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DAY	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	da	T.Anza	ai I.Fu	ujioka	1 0				No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	iN (CHEC	K AP	PR.	DESC	RIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	26	(1257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada	CHECK	(K.0	Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 26/25			01 431	

2-2 Installing the scanner

2-2-1 For safety installation

Before installing the scanner, read the following cautions carefully to avoid scanner trouble.

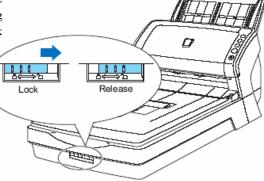
Refer to Section 1-1-3 "Environmental Specifications" for information of power source and scanner dimensions.

- Install the scanner away from strong magnetic fields and other sources of noise.
- Do not install the scanner near heating apparatus or in the direct sunlight.
- Install the scanner in a location which is level and subject to minimal vibration.
- Do not install the scanner in locations subject to humidity and dust.
- Do not block the ventilation ports.
- Protect the scanner from static electricity.
- Use proper AC voltage.
- Make sure the rubber pads on the bottom of the scanner grounds evenly.

2-2-2 Installation

- (1) <u>ff-6140/ff-6130</u> If you wish to install the imprinter (optional), refer to Section 8-3-2 before performing the following procedures.
- (2) fi-6240/fi-6230 Unlock the Transport lock.

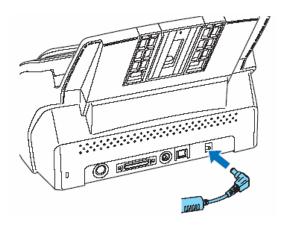
The carrier unit inside the fi-6240/fi-6230 is fixed in place with the transport lock to prevent the scanner from being damaged during transportation. To unlock the transport lock, slide the transport lock switch on the scanner front.



- (3) Referring to Section 5-8-1, attach the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit).
- (4) Connect the AC cable to the AC Adapter. Note: Use only the supplied AC adapter.
- (5) Connect the AC adapter connector to the scanner's DC inlet. (right figure)
- (6) Plug the AC cable into an outlet. If you want to plug it into a two-slot outlet, use the supplied adapter plug.

Notes:

- Before plugging the adapter plug into an outlet, be sure to establish a ground
- The Function Number Display and LED of the operator panel of the scanner may flash for an instant when the AC cable is plugged into an outlet. This is a phenomenon due to the initial diagnosis, but not a failure.



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN (CHECK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	2	7/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page		11231

- (7) Connect either with the USB cable or the SCSI cable. (fi-6130/fi-6230 has USB cable only.)
 - Note 1: Connect only one of the USB or SCSI cable.
 - Note 2: Be sure to use the USB cable which comes as an accessory with this scanner. Scanning operation with commercially available cables is not guaranteed.
 - Note 3: When connecting to a USB hub, use the first stage USB hub that is closest to the computer. If you use the second or later hub stages, the scanner may not operate correctly.
 - Note 4: If you connect the scanner with USB 2.0, it is required that the USB port and Hub are compliant with USB 2.0. The scanning speed may slow down if it is connected with USB 1.1.
 - Note 5: When using the scanner with a SCSI interface, the following SCSI cable and SCSI card must be purchased.
 - SCSI cable:

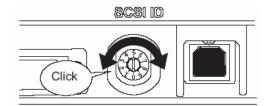
Use a cable which complies with a 50 Pin Contact Shielded High-Density SCSI Device Connector for Ultra SCSI.

- SCSI card:

Find the recommended SCSI card information in the Fujitsu web site (FAQ). http://imagescanner.fujitsu.com/

- Note 6: When connecting the SCSI cable, be sure to first connect the SCSI cable, and, then turn on the scanner and the PC. Note 7: In a SCSI daisy chain formation, connect the scanner so that it is the terminated device.
- (8) The SCSI ID initially set at the factory is [5]. If the SCSI ID of another SCSI device is set to the same ID, either change the scanner's SCSI ID or SCSI ID of the other SCSI device. Turn off the scanner, and then set the SCSI ID using the SCSI ID switch on the back of the scanner.

ID No.	Description
0 to 7	Can be set as the ID
8, 9	Works with the factory default value (SCSI ID=5).



- (9) Press the Power button to turn ON the scanner.
- (10) Turn ON the computer.
- (11) Install either of the scanner drivers below and ScandAll PRO and Error Recovery Guide.

Scanner drivers:

Scanning Application:

- FUJITSU TWAIN 32
- ScandAll PRO (Supports both FUJITSU TWAIN 32 and ISIS)
- FUJITSU ISIS

Information at scanner error:

- Error Recovery Guide

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisior	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	29	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	(.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	TFU		rage	20	51251

Chapter 3 Maintenance Parts

POS	Description	Part Number				Qua	antity	7			Ref. for appear-	Ref. for replace-	Remarks
103	Description	Tart Number	fi-6	140	fi-6	240	fi-6	5130	fi-6	5230	appear- ance	ment	Kemarks
ADI	Section												
1	BASE UNIT	PA03540-D941	1		1						2.1	5.0.1	
1	BASE UNIT L	PA03540-D951					1		1		3-1	5-9-1	
_	BASE ASSY	PA03540-E941		1		1					2.2	5.0.2	
2	BASE ASSY L	PA03540-E951						1		1	3-2	5-9-2	
3	INVERTER	PA03540-K910		1		1		1		1	3-3	5-9-3	
4	LAMP	PA03540-K911		1		1		1		1	3-4	5-9-4	
5	US SENSOR FX	PA03540-K913		1		1		1		1	3-5	5-9-5	Multifeed detection
6	OPT UNIT	PA03540-E903		1		1		1		1	3-6	5-9-6	
7	BW MOTOR	PA03540-F901		1		1		1		1	3-7	5-9-7	
8	GUIDE P ASSY(Sheet guide)	PA03540-E908		1		1					3-8	5-9-8	
0	GUIDE P ASSY L(Sheet guide)	PA03540-E909						1		1	3-0	3-9-8	
9	PICK MOTOR ASSY	PA03540-F904		1		1		1		1	3-9	5-9-9	
10	PICK MOTOR	PA03540-F903		1		1		1		1	3-10	5-9-10	
11	PICK SHAFT ASSY	PA03540-F907		1		1		1		1	3-11	5-9-11	
12	SWITCH	PA03484-K804		1		1		1		1	3-12	5-9-12	ADF open detection.
	UPPER UNIT	PA03540-D961	1										*1
	UPPER UNIT C	PA03540-D967	1										* 2
	UPPER UNIT	PA03540-D971			1								*1
13	UPPER UNIT C	PA03540-D977			1						3-13	5-10-1	*2
	UPPER UNIT L	PA03540-D981					1						*1
	UPPER UNIT LC	PA03540-D987											* 2
	UPPER UNIT L UPPER UNIT LC	PA03540-D991 PA03540-D997							1				*1 *2
14	UPPER ASSY	PA03540-E931		1		1		1		1	3-14	5-10-2	. 2
15	ADF MOTOR	PA03540-K915		1		1		1		1	3-14	5-10-3	
16	OPT UNIT	PA03540-E903		1		1		1		1	3-6	5-10-4	
17	INVERTER	PA03540-K910		1		1		1		1	3-3	5-10-5	
18	LAMP	PA03540-K911		1		1		1		1	3-4	5-10-5	
19	US SENSOR RV	PA03484-K905		1		1		1		1	3-19	5-10-7	Multifeed detection *3
20	SENSOR EMP	PA03540-K906		1		1		1		1	3-20	5-10-8	Paper empty detection
21	PANEL PCA	PA03540-K907		1		1		1		1	3-21	5-10-9	
22	BR SHAFT ASSY	PA03540-F905		1		1		1		1	3-22	5-10-10	

^{*1:} For Europe, North America

											TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
80	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada .	A.Miyo	shi I.Fuji	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.		waintenan	ice iviai	iuai	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+0-00	ΛU	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	3N	CHEC	K APP	R. [DESC	RIPTION		•	DELL	LIMITED	Page	20	9/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Ok	kada	CHECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		raye	25	11231

^{*2:} For China

^{*3:} Shared with fi-5120C/fi-5220C.

Maintenance Parts (Cont'd)

POS	Description	Part Number				Qua	ntity				Ref. for appear-	Ref. for replace-	Remarks
103	Description	Tart Number	fi-6	140	fi-62	240	fi-6	5130	fi-6	230	appear-	ment	Remarks
23	CONTROL PCA	PA03540-K901	1										
23	CONTROLICA	PA03540-K917			1						3-23	5-11	
24	CONTROL PCA L	PA03540-K918					1				3 23	5 11	
	CONTROLICALE	PA03540-K919							1				
25	STACKER UNIT	PA03540-E904	1				1				3-25	5-8-2	
26	CHUTER UNIT (ADF paper chute)	PA03540-E905	1		1		1		1		3-26	5-8-1	
27	AC ADAPTER	PA03334-K920	1		1		1		1		3-27		*4
	AC CORDSET E	PA63083-1831											For Europe
	AC CORDSET UK	PA63098-1831											For UK
28	AC CORDSET U	PA63082-1831	1		1		1		1		3-28		For North America
	AC CORDSET C	PA63084-1831											For China
29	USB CABLE	PA61001-0142	1		1		1		1		3-29		
Flatl	bed												
30	FB TOP COV ASSY	PA03540-E961			1				1		3-30	5-12-1	
31	FB MOTOR UNIT	PA03540-E919			1				1		3-31	5-12-2	
32	FB MOTOR	PA03540 E909 PA03540-F90904			1				1		3-32	5-12-3	
33	OPT BOX UNIT	PA03540-E910			1				1		3-33	5-12-4	
34	OPT UNIT	PA03540-E903			1				1		3-6	5-12-5	
35	INVERTER	PA03540-K910			1				1		3-3	5-12-6	
36	LAMP	PA03540-K911			1				1		3-4	5-12-7	
37	CR CABLE	PA70002-0928			1				1		3-37	5-12-8	*5
38	DOC COV ASSY	PA03540-E921			1				1		3-38	5-12-9	
39	JOINT PCA	PA03540-K916			1				1		3-39	5-12-10	

^{*4:} Shared with fi-5530C2

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenar			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA035	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	GΝ	CHE	CK	APPF	R. [DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	20)/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.C)kada	Cl	IECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	30	11231

^{*5:} Shared with fi-5220C

3-1 BASE UNIT

	Description	Parts No.		Remarks
ſ	BASE UNIT	PA03540-D941	fi-6140/fi-6240	
ſ	BASE UNIT L	PA03540-D951	fi-6130/fi-6230	

Paper protection sensor



3-2 BASE ASSY

Description	Parts No.		Remarks
BASE ASSY	PA03540-E941	fi-6140/fi-6240	OPT Unit is not included.
BASE ASSY L	PA03540-E951	fi-6130/fi-6230	(Remove OPT Unit from Base Unit. The remaining assembly is Base ASSY.)

Paper protection sensor



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	2	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	3.	1/23/

3-3 INVERTER

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
INVERTER	PA03540-K910	



3-4 LAMP

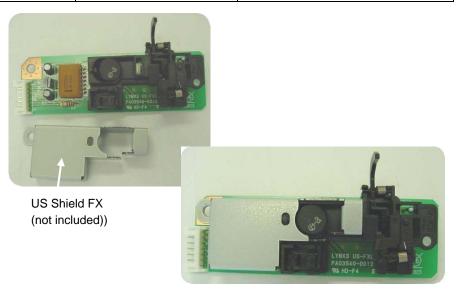
Description	Parts No.	Remarks
LAMP	PA03540-K911	



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	shi I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	K APP	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	2'	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	3.	21231

3-5 US SENSOR FX (Multifeed detection)

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
US SENSOR FX	PA03540-K913	Transmitter.
		PICK sensor and Top sensor are included.
		US shield FX is not included.



3-6 OPT UNIT

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
OPT UNIT	PA03540-E903	



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	3/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	33	51251

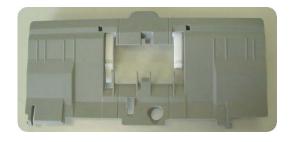
3-7 BW MOTOR

Description	Parts No.	Remarks		
BW MOTOR	PA03540-F901			



3-8 GUIDE P ASSY (Sheet Guide)

Description	Parts No.		Remarks
GUIDE P ASSY	PA03540-E908	fi-6140/fi-6240	
GUIDE P ASSY L	PA03540-E909	fi-6130/fi-6230	



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi I	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I.	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK A	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	2/	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	34	+1231

3-9 PICK MOTOR ASSY

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
PICK MOTOR ASSY	PA03540-F904	



3-10 PICK MOTOR

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
PICK MOTOR	PA03540-F903	A belt tension adjusting spring is attached.

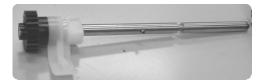




08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	24	5/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	3.	51251

3-11 PICK SHAFT ASSY

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
PICK SHAFT ASSY	PA03540-F907	



3-12 SWITCH (ADF open detection)

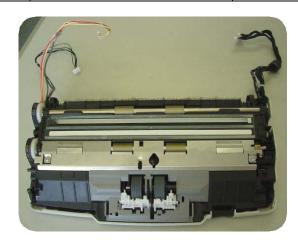
Description	Parts No.	Remarks			
SWITCH	PA03540-K804	Shared with fi 5120C/fi 5220C.			



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi I.	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi- Maintenance Manu			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I.	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUS			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I.	I.Fujiok	a Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			No.	F IFAUSS4U-DUAA/0			
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN CHECK		CK A	APPR.	DESC	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED) Page	36/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	30	01231

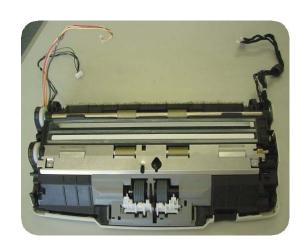
3-13 UPPER UNIT

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	
UPPER UNIT	PA03540-D961	fi-6140 for Europe and North America	Panel PCA is not included.
UPPER UNIT C	PA03540-D967	fi-6140 for China	
UPPER UNIT	PA03540-D971	fi-6240 for Europe and North America	
UPPER UNIT C	PA03540-D977	fi-6240 for China	
UPPER UNIT L	PA03540-D981	fi-6130 for Europe and North America	
UPPER UNIT LC	PA03540-D987	fi-6130 for China	
UPPER UNIT L	PA03540-D991	fi-6230 for Europe and North America	
UPPER UNIT LC	PA03540-D997	fi-6230 for China	



3-14 UPPER ASSY

Description	Parts No.	Remarks							
UPPER ASSY	PA03450-E931	Panel PCA and OPT Unit are not included. A dummy TOP cover is included. (Remove OPT Unit from Upper Unit. The remaining assembly is Upper ASSY.)							



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	roshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. TITLE fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi Maintenance Man)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA035	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			PFU LIMITED		Dogo	37/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	(.Okada	Cl	IECK	K.Okada	Okada APPR. T.Anzai					Page	3	11231

3-15 ADF MOTOR

Description	Parts No.	Remarks					
ADF MOTOR	PA03540-K915	A belt tension adjusting spring is attached.					





Adjusting spring

- 3-16 (Reserved)
- **3-17** (**Reserved**)
- 3-18 (Reserved)

3-19 US SENSOR RV (Multifeed detection)

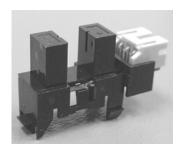
Description	Parts No.	Remarks
US SENSOR RV	PA03484-K905	Receiver.
		Shared with fi-5120C/fi-5220C



08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.N	Vliyoshi	I.Fujic	oka Re	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. TITLE fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/Maintenance Ma								/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.	.Anzai	I.Fujic	oka Re	efer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.	.Anzai	I.Fujic	oka Re	efer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CH	HECK	APPF	R. DE	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	20	3/257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Okada	la C⊦	IECK	K.Okac	da		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFC	J LIIVII I ED Page 3872			51251

3-20 SENSOR EMP (Paper empty detection)

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
SENSOR EMP	PA03540-K906	



3-21 PANEL PCA

Description	Parts No.	Remarks				
PANEL PCA	PA03540-K907	EEPROM data need to be saved.				
		(Refer to Section 6-2.)				



3-22 BR SHAFT ASSY

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
BR SHAFT ASSY	PA03540-F905	



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	shi I.Fuji	oka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. TITLE fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi Maintenance Man)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	K APP	R. DESC	RIPTION			PFU LIMITED		Dogo	20	9/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	Okada APPR. T.Anzai					Page	33	71231

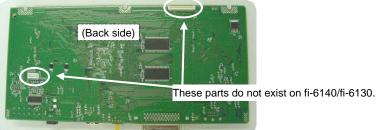
3-23 CONTROL PCA

Description	Parts No.		Remarks
CONTROL PCA	PA03540-K901	fi-6140	The bracket is not included.
CONTROL FCA	PA03540-K917	fi-6240	
CONTROL PCA L	PA03540-K918	fi-6130	The bracket is not included.
CONTROL PCA L	PA03540-K919	fi-6230	

fi-6240/fi-6230







fi-6140/fi-6130



These parts do not exist on fi-6240/fi-6230.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.M	liyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Re	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. TITLE fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi Maintenance Mar								/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.A	Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Re	efer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DAY	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.A	\nzai	I.Fujio	oka R	efer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	MO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CH	ECK	APPF	R. DI	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10)/257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Okada	Cl	IECK	K.Oka	da		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFC		rage	40	11231

3-24 (Reserved)

3-25 STACKER UNIT

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
STACKER UNIT	PA03540-E904	fi-6140/fi-6130 only



3-26 CHUTER UNIT (ADF paper chute)

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
CHUTER UNIT	PA03540-E905	



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	ni I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	41	1/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada C	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	41	1/23/

3-27 AC ADAPTER

Description	Parts No.	Remarks		
AC ADAPTER	PA03334-K920	Shared with fi-5530C2.		



3-28 AC CORDSETS

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
AC CORDSET E	PA63083-1831	For Europe
AC CORDSET UK	PA63098-1831	For UK
AC CORDSET U	PA63082-1831	For North America
AC CORDSET C	PA63084-1831	For China



3-29 USB CABLE

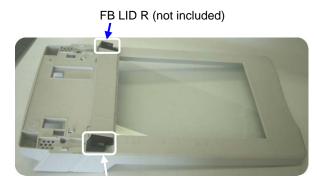
	Description	Parts No.	Remarks			
U	ISB CABLE	PA61001-0142				



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda	A.Miyo	shi	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHEC	Ж	APPF	R. [DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1	2/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Oł	kada	СН	ECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	42	41231

3-30 FB TOP COVER

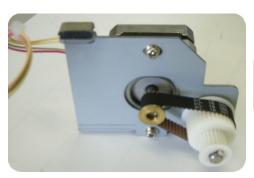
Description	Parts No.	Remarks
FB TOP COVER	PA03450-E961	FB LID L and FB LID R are not included.



FB LID L (not included)

3-31 FB MOTOR UNIT

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
FB MOTOR UNIT	PA03540-E919	A belt tension adjusting spring is attached.





Adjusting spring

08	July 27, 09	K.Okac	da A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	ka Re	er to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okac	da T.An	zai	I.Fujic	ka Re	er to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okac	da T.An	zai	I.Fujic	ka Re	er to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK	APPF	R. DE	SCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	43	3/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CH	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	4.	51251

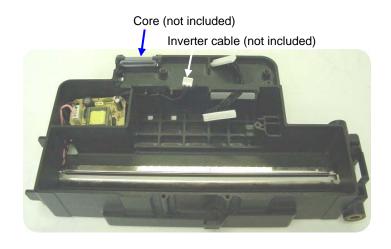
3-32 FB MOTOR

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
FB MOTOR	PA03540-E909	A belt tension adjusting spring is
	PA03540-F909 04	attached. 04



3-33 OPT BOX UNIT

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
OPT BOX UNIT	PA03540-E910	The following parts are NOT included.
		- OPT UNIT
		- JOINT PCA
		- Core
		- Inverter cable
		The following parts are included.
		- INVERTER
		- LAMP



- 3-34 (Reserved)
- 3-35 (Reserved)
- 3-36 (Reserved)

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	shi I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	K APP	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	4.	1/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		Page	4	+/23/

3-37 CR CABLE

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
CR CABLE	PA70002-0928	Shared with fi-5220C



3-38 DOC COVER ASSY

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
DOC COVER ASSY	PA03540-E921	Cushion is attached.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	14	5/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	4.	01201

3-39 JOINT PCA

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
JOINT PCA	PA03540-K916	



6-40 (Reserved)

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyos	shi I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	ai I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DAY	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	ai I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	< APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	14	5/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	40	31231

Chapter 4 Troubleshooting

4-1 Operation Panel Sequence at Power-on

The following display is shown during initial processing.

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description
8	ON	Displays "8" without blinking. Immediately after power-on, scanner turns all the segments ON.

When the initial processing starts, the following display is shown.

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description
8	ON	Displays "P" without blinking. It indicates scanner is currently in initial processing.

When the lamp intensity is getting close to the standard value, the following display is shown.

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description
	ON	Displays "0" without blinking. It indicates the lamp intensity is getting close to the standard value.

When the initial processing terminates properly, the following display is shown.

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description					
	ON	Displays default Function No. without blinking. It indicates that scanner is in ready state.					

The Function No. is incremented by 1 every time the Function button is pressed. After Function No. 9 is displayed, the number changes to "C" and then returns to "0".

Any error at initial processing (self-diagnosis) is displayed on the Operator Panel (Fucntion No. Display).

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1	7/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	4,	11231

4-2 Temporary errors and Alarm detection algorithm

4-2-1 Temporary errors

Temporary errors occur during scanning operation and can be remedied by an operator. The temporary errors are displayed on the PC screen through the driver and/or on the operator panel.

When a temporary error occurs, the scanner displays the following:

Function	Power	Description (supplement)
No. Display	LED	
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	ON	Displays "U" or "J" and the error No. (0~8) alternately. Example) When error "U0" occurs, the scanner displays the following: "U"→"SP"→"0" The interval of changing the display is approximately 0.5 second.
U		The interval of changing the display is approximately 0.5 second.

When Scan or Send to button is pressed while the alarm is displayed, the scanner returns to the "Ready" display (Function number display).

4-2-2 Alarms

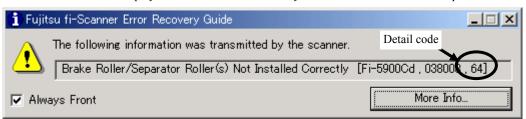
Alarms require the maintenance conducted by an authorized service person. The following table shows the display and detection algorithm for alarms. The alarms are displayed on a PC screen and/or on the operator panel (Function No. Display). When an alarm occurs, the scanner displays the following on the operator panel:

		ys the rone wing on the operator paner.
Function	Power	Description (supplement)
No. Display	LED	
€	ON	Displays "A", "C", "E", "F", "H", or "L" and one of the alarms (0 ~ 9) alternately. The example shown in the left column is the case of Alarm "E0". The display sequence is: "E" → "SP"→ "0"
		The interval of changing the display is approximately 0.5 second.

When Scan or Send to button is pressed while the alarm is displayed, the scanner returns to the "Ready" display (Function number display).

4-2-3 Error Recovery Guide

If the application "Error Recovery Guide" (step (11) of Section 2.2.2) is installed in the PC, the corresponding error name and error code are displayed on the PC screen when any error or scanner alarm comes up.



									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240)/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miyo	oshi I.Fu	ioka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			IIILL	Maintenan	nce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ioka Refer	to Revision	on Record on page 2. DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6			CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ioka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK APF	R. DESC	DESCRIPTION PFU LIMITED			Page	19	8/257		
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		raye	40	31 231

4-3 Troubleshooting

When a temporary error or an alarm occurs, find the troubleshooting procedure from the list in this section and go to the related section for maintenance. Before starting the troubleshooting, get the following information from your customer to understand whether the error is scanner-related or system-related.

- Is the scanner operated correctly?
- Are the fault symptoms reproducible or persistent? (Check if the target scanner causes the same error under other systems.)

Following lists the case of troubleshooting described later in this section.

[Scanner Section]

Error category	Error description	Related section	Error Recovery Guide message 02
Device	Scanner is not turned ON. (Display of the operator panel goes out)	4-3-1	
	Scanning does not start.	4-3-2	
	Scanned image is distorted.	4-3-3	
Image	Resolution is not satisfactory or tone error is too large.	4-3-4	
Ü	Too much jitter on scanned image with FB scanning	4-3-5	
	Scanned image is misaligned with FB scanning	4-3-6	
	Scan magnification factor abnormal with FB scanning	4-3-7	
	Too much jitter on scanned image with ADF scanning	4-3-8	
	Scanned image is misaligned with ADF scanning	4-3-9	
	Scan magnification factor abnormal with ADF scanning	4-3-10	
	Vertical streaks appear in scanned image	4-3-11	
	When calibrating white level of scanned image	4-3-12	
Temporary error	Frequent "J0: Paper jam error" 06	4-3-41	Stopped Scanning to prevent paper damage 038001 51 06
	Frequent "J1: Paper jam error" at scanner section	4-3-13	Document jam 038001 31 038001 50
	Frequent "J2: Multi feed error"	4-3-14	Multifeed Detected (Length) 038007 56 Multifeed Detected (Overlap) 038007 55
	Error detection of "U4: Scanner cover open"	4-3-15	ADF cover opened 038002 40
	Error detection of "No paper on the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit)"	4-3-16	No Document in Hopper 038003 20
Scanner	Frequent "U0: Shipping lock error"	4 2 17	Shipping lock malfunction 048005 10
alarm	Frequent "E0: Carrier drive alarm"	4-3-17	Flatbed motor malfunction 048005 87
	"E1: Optical alarm (FB)"		Optical error (Flatbed) 048006 7E
	"E2: Optical alarm (ADF front)"	4-3-18	Optical error (ADF Front) 048006 74
ľ	"E3: Optical alarm (ADF back)"		Optical error (ADF Back) 048006 75
	"E6: Operator panel alarm"	4-3-19	
	"E7: EEPROM alarm"	4-3-20	EEPROM error 044400 D2
	"E8: SCSI alarm"	4-3-21	
	"E9: Image memory alarm"	4-3-22	Memory malfunction 044400 E4
	"F4: Background changeover unit alarm"	4 2 22	Background changeover unit failure 048005 C2 (Front)
		4-3-23	Background changeover unit failure 048005 C3 (Back)
	"C0: LSI alarm"	4-3-24	LSI malfunction 044400 nn
	"H0: Motor alarm"	4.2.25	E == C = ADE === (11 = = 0.40004
	"H8: Motor alarm"	4-3-25	Fuse for ADF motor blown 048004 nn
	"H7: Lamp alarm"	4-3-26	Lamp fuse malfunction 048003 84
	"L6: US sensor alarm"	4-3-27	Sensor malfunction 044400 nn
	"F: ROM sum check alarm"	4-3-28	
	Driver error	4-3-29	

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	er to Revision Record on page 2. P1PA03540-B0XX/6			VIC	CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	40	9/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	45	91231

Section 4-3

Error category	Error description	Related section	Error Recovery Guide message 02
	"Abnormal command"	4-3-30	Invalid command 052000 nn Invalid CDB field 052400 nn Unsupported logical unit (LUN) 052500 nn Invalid field parameter list 052600 nn Command sequence error 052C00 nn Wrong windows combination 052C02 nn
Scanner alarm (cont'd)	"Interface alarm"	4-3-31	Message error 0B4300 nn Select/Reselect Failure 0B4500 nn SCSI parity error 0B4700 nn Initiator Detected Error Message Received 0B4800 nn Overlapped Command Attempted 0B4E00 nn Image transfer error 0B8001 nn

[Imprinter section]

Error category	Error description	Related section	Error Recovery Guide message				
Temporary	Frequent "J1: Paper jam" error at Imprinter	4-3-32	Document jam 038001 5A				
error	Error detection of "U5: Imprinter cover open"	4-3-33	ADF cover opened 038002 4A				
Imprinter	Imprinter does not initially operate	4-3-34					
(option)	"U6: No print cartridge"	4-3-35	Print cartridge not installed (Post-Imprinter) 038010 B4				
	"H6: Imprinter fuse blown"	4-3-36	Imprinter fuse malfunction 048011 B1				
	"A0: Imprinter control board alarm"		Post-Imprinter Error (RAM) 048010 B2				
	"A1: Imprinter communication timeout"	4.2.25	Post-Imprinter Error (Communication Timed Out) 048010 B3				
	"A2: Ink head alarm"	4-3-37	Post-Imprinter Error (Printer head) 048010 B5				
	"A3: Imprinter EEPROM alarm"		Post-Imprinter Error (EEPROM) 048010 B6				
	"A4: Imprinter ROM alarm"		Post-Imprinter Error (ROM) 048010 B8				
	No printing / Printed letters are distorted	4-3-38					
	Print form is dirty	4-3-39					
	Printing is interrupted in process	4-3-40					

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi I	I.Fujioł	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujioł	ka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. P1PA03540-B0XX				VIC	CUST.		
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujioł	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK /	APPR.	. DESC	RIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 50/257			1/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	30	11231

How to Troubleshoot:

♦ The troubleshooting should be conducted from item number 1 to the last item number in each table. Continue the troubleshooting until the error is corrected.

4-3-1 Scanner is not turned ON (Display of the operator panel goes out)

Table 4-3-1

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to
	turning OFF and ON the scanner?	turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the
		power button to turn the scanner ON.
	Are the AC cable and AC Adapter	
	correctly connected?	
2	Replace the AC cable and AC Adapter	
	and see if the error is resolved.	
3	Replace Panel PCA and see if the error is	Refer to Section 5-10-9.
	resolved.	
4	Replace Control PCA and see if the error	Refer to Section 5-11.
	is resolved.	

4-3-2 Scanning does not start

Table 4-3-2

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check					
1	Does the same symptom appear when turning the scanner ON again?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.					
2	Check the items listed in the right column.	 Are the AC cable and AC Adapter correctly connected? Is there documents loaded on ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit)? Is ADF cover completely closed? Is interface cable correctly connected? Is SCSI ID correctly set? If any temporary error or alarm is indicated, follow the corresponding troubleshooting. 					

4-3-3 Scanned image is distorted

Due to loose connection of connectors, cut wire in cables or defective parts, scanned image may have regular or random pattern distortion on it.

Table 4-3-3

Item	Check items	How/where to check				
No.						
1	Check the items listed in the right	Is interface cable correctly connected?				
	column.	If any temporary error or alarm is indicated, follow the				
		corresponding troubleshooting.				
2	Are the cables between Control PCA and	ADF front scanning: See Section 5-9-6 for checking.				
	Optical Unit damaged? Or are the	ADF back scanning: See Section 5-10-4 for checking.				
	connectors connected correctly?	FB scanning: See Section 5-12-5 for checking.				
3	Replace Optical Unit and see if the error	ADF front scanning: See Section 5-9-6 for replacement.				
	is resolved.	ADF back scanning: See Section 5-10-4 for replacement.				
		FB scanning: See Section 5-12-5 for replacement.				
4	Replace Control PCA and see if the error	Refer to Section 5-11.				
	is resolved.					

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	e2. DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			CUST.	
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK .	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 51/257			1 /257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage)	1/23/

4-3-4 Resolution is not satisfactory or tone error is too large

Table 4-3-4

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check				
1	Check the items listed in the right column.	 Does the document satisfy the paper specifications described in Section 1-1-6? Are the scan settings correctly specified for the application software used? Is interface cable correctly connected? If any temporary error or alarm is indicated, follow the corresponding troubleshooting. 				
2	Clean feed rollers, Eject rollers, plastic rollers and glass surface, and check whether the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-2-1 "Cleaning the ADF."				
3	Is the OPT Unit or Lamp dirty? Are the cables damaged? Or are the connectors connected correctly?	See Section 5-3-1 for cleaning/checking.				
4	Is the OPT Unit for this scanner installed?	ADF front scanning: See Section 5-9-6 for removal. ADF back scanning: See Section 5-10-4 for removal. FB scanning: See Section 5-12-5 for removal.				
5	Replace OPT Unit and see if the error is resolved.	ADF front scanning: See Section 5-9-6 for replacement. ADF back scanning: See Section 5-10-4 for replacement. FB scanning: See Section 5-12-5 for replacement.				
6	Replace Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11.				

4-3-5 Too much jitter on scanned image with FB scanning fi-6240/fi-6230

The following shows the sample of scanned image when "Jitter" error occurs. This error occurs when the carrier unit does not move smoothly.

Scanned image with jitter ABCDEFG

Normal scanned image ABCDEFG

Table 4-3-5

Item	Check items	How/where to check				
No.						
1	Check the items listed in the right	 Any shock given to the scanner during operation? 				
	column.	 Is the scanner placed on a level surface? 				
2	Does any foreign object get inside and	Remove FB top cover for checking by referring to Section				
	prevent Carrier unit from moving?	5-12-1.				
3	Is CR belt tension loose?	Refer to a note of procedure (2) of Section 5-5 for checking.				
4	Is the OPT Unit correctly installed?	Refer to Section 5-12-5.				
5	Replace FB Motor and see if the error is	Refer to Section 5-12-3 for checking.				
	resolved.	_				
6	Replace Control PCA and see if the error	Refer to Section 5-11.				
	is resolved.					

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi I	I.Fujioł	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujioł	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujioł	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK /	APPR.	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	51	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	34	41431

4-3-6 Scanned image is misaligned with FB scanning fi-6240/fi-6230

Table 4-3-6

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check					
1	Check the items listed in the right column.	 Any shock given to the scanner during operation? Is the scanner placed on a level surface? Are the scan settings correct for the application software used? 					
2	Is the document aligned to the reference point on the document bed?	Refer to Section 7-1-3 "Loading Documents on the Flatbed for Scanning					
3	Adjust the offset by Maintenance mode.	Refer to Section 6-1-4.					
4	Is FB top cover installed correctly?	Refer to procedure (1) \sim (5) in Section 5-12-1.					
5	Is the OPT Unit installed correctly?	Refer to Section 5-12-5 for removal.					
6	Replace OPT Unit in FB and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-12-5.					

4-3-7 Scan magnification factor abnormal with FB scanning fi-6240/fi-6230

Table 4-3-7

Table 4	~ .	
Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Check the items listed in the right	Any shock given to the scanner during operation?
	column.	 Is the scanner placed on a level surface?
		Are the scan settings correct for the application
		software used?
2	Does the abnormal magnification occur	Main scanning direction: Go to Item No.3.
	horizontally (main scanning direction) or	Sub scanning direction Go to Item No.7.
	vertically (sub scanning direction)?	
3	Adjust the magnification by	Refer to Section 6-1-3.
	Maintenance mode.	
4	Does any foreign object get inside and	Remove FB cover for checking by referring to Section 5-12-1.
	prevent Carrier unit from moving?	
5	Is CR belt tension loose?	Refer to a notice of (2) in Section 5-5 for checking.
6	Replace FB Motor and see if the error is	Refer to Section 5-12-3.
	resolved.	If FB Motor is OK, go to item No. 9.
7	Is the OPT Unit installed correctly?	Refer to Section 5-12-5 for removal.
8	Replace the OPT Unit and see if the	Refer to Section 5-12-5.
	error is resolved.	
9	Replace Control PCA and see if the error	Refer to Section 5-11.
	is resolved.	

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	shi I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	K APP	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	50	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page).	01201

4-3-8 Too much jitter on scanned image with ADF scanning

The following shows the sample of scanned image when "Jitter" error occurs. This error occurs when the ADF feed roller does not transport the document smoothly.

Scanned image with jitter ABCDEFG

Normal scanned image ABCDEFG

Table 4-3-8

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the document satisfy the paper specification?	Refer to Section 1-1-6.
2	Clean Feed rollers, Eject rollers, plastic rollers, glass surface and paper feeding surface, and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-2-1 "Cleaning ADF".
3	Replace Pick roller or Brake roller and see if the error is resolved.	Check the consumable counter from the TWAIN driver screen or in the built-in Maintenance mode. When the counter exceeds the values shown in Section 7-3-1, replace Pick roller or Brake roller.
4	Are the Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide) and Feed roller cover (plate guide) installed correctly?	Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide): Refer to Section 5-9-8. Feed roller cover (plate guide): Refer to Section 5-10-7.
5	Are the belt tensions of PICK Motor or ADF Motor appropriate?	PICK Motor: Refer to Section 5-9-10. ADF Motor: Refer to Section 5-10-3.
6	Are the cables between Control PCA and PICK Motor or ADF Motor damaged? Are the connectors connected correctly?	PICK Motor: Refer to Section 5-9-10. ADF Motor: Refer to Section 5-10-3.
7	Are the OPT Units installed correctly?	ADF front scanning: Refer to Section 5-9-6 for removal. ADF back scanning: Refer to Section 5-10-4 for removal.
8	Replace PICK Motor or ADF Motor and see if the error is resolved.	PICK Motor: Refer to Section 5-9-10. ADF Motor: Refer to Section 5-10-3.
9	Replace Upper Unit and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-10-1.
10	Replace Base Unit and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-9-1.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miy	roshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisior	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	5.	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	.Okada	Cl	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		Page	34	+/23/

4-3-9 Scanned image is misaligned with ADF scanning

Table 4-3-9

Table 4		YY / 1 1 1 1
Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Check the items listed in the right	- Does the document satisfy the paper specifications described
	column.	in Section 1-1-6?
		- Are the scan settings correct for the application software
		used?
2	Clean feed rollers, Eject rollers and	Refer to Section 7-2-1.
	plastic roller and see if the error is	
	resolved.	
3	Adjust the offset by Maintenance mode.	Refer to Section 6-1-4.
4	Check the Pick roller and Brake roller	Refer to Section 6-1-6 "Maintenance mode #5: Consumable
	counter to see if they need to be	counter display and reset" and Section 7-3-1 "Consumables."
	replaced.	· ·
5	Is the OPT Unit installed correctly?	ADF (front) scanning: Refer to Section 5-9-6.
6	Replace the OPT Unit and see if the	ADF (back) scanning: Refer to Section 5-10-4.
	error is resolved.	· · ·
7	When the backside image is misaligned,	Refer to Section 5-10-1.
	replace Upper Unit and see whether the	
	error is resolved.	
8	When the front side image is misaligned,	Refer to Section 5-9-1.
1	replace Base Unit and see whether the	
	error is resolved.	
	off of the federal of	

4-3-10 Scan magnification factor abnormal with ADF scanning

Table 4-3-10

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check the items listed in the right column.	Are the scan settings correct for the application software used?
2	Adjust the magnification in Maintenance mode.	Refer to Section 6-1-3. When main scanning magnification is abnormal: Go to Item No.3 When sub-scanning magnification is abnormal: Go to Item No.8
3	Clean feed rollers roller and plastic roller and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-2-1.
4	Does any foreign object get inside Upper Unit and disturb transporting operation by feed rollers?	Open the ADF and check Upper Unit gear.
5	Check the Pick roller and Brake roller counter to see if they need to be replaced.	Refer to Section 6-1-6 "Maintenance mode #5: Consumable counter display and reset" and Section 7-3-1 "Consumables."
6	Is the ADF Motor belt loose?	Refer to Section 5-10-3.
7	Replace the ADF Motor and see whether the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-10-3.
8	Is the OPT Unit installed correctly?	ADF (front) scanning: Refer to Section 5-9-6.
9	Replace the OPT Unit and see whether the error is resolved.	ADF (back) scanning: Refer to Section 5-10-4.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	54	5/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	3.	01201

4-3-11 Vertical streaks appear in scanned image

Table 4-3-11

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Check the items listed in the right	
	column.	software used?
		Is interface cable correctly connected?
2	Clean glass in the ADF and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-2-1.
3	When the error occurs on ADF front,	Glass inside of Base Unit: Refer to Section 5-3-2.
	clean the glass inside of Base Unit.	Glass inside of Upper Unit: Refer to Section 5-3-3.
	When the error occurs on ADF back,	Glass inside of FB: Refer to Section 5-3-4.
1	clean the glass of the Upper Unit.	
07	If glasses inside of the Units cannot be	Base Unit replacement: Section 5-9-1
	cleaned, replace the Base Unit/Upper	Upper Unit replacement: Section 5-10-1
	Unit.	
	When the error occurs on FB, clean	
	inside of the glass of the FB.	
4	Does any dirt get on the white reference	Base Unit: Refer to Section 5-3-5
	sheet?	Upper Unit: Refer to Section 5-3-6
5	Is the mirror of the OPT Unit dirty?	ADF (front/back)/ FB: Refer to Section 5-3-1.
	Are cables damaged?	
	Are connectors connected correctly?	
6	Replace the OPT Unit and see if the	ADF front: Refer to Section 5-9-6 for replacement procedure.
	error is resolved.	ADF back: Refer to Section 5-10-4 for replacement procedure.
		FB: Refer to Section 5-12-5 for replacement procedure.
7	Replace Control PCA and see if the error	Refer to Section 5-11.
	is resolved.	

4-3-12 When calibrating white of scanned image

Item	Check items	How/where to check			
No.					
1	Check the items listed in the right column.	 Are the scan settings correct for the application software used? Are the white reference and glass in the ADF dirty? 			
2	Conduct the white adjustment by Maintenance mode.	Refer to Section 6-1-5.			

									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614PF			
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ice Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	P1PA03540-B0XX/6		
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	56	5/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	30	31 431

4-3-13 Frequent "J1: paper jam" error at scanner section (ERG: Document jam 038001 31, 038001 50)

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Do the documents satisfy paper specification?	Refer to Section 1-1-6 for paper specification.
2	Have the documents been jogged?	 Align the edge of documents for stable paper feeding. Remove documents with crease or dog-ear. Scanning different width of documents may cause skew and result in paper jam.
3	Are Chuter Unit (ADF paper chute), Guide P ASSY (Sheet guide), Feed roller cover (plate guide) and Brake roller cover installed correctly?	Chuter Unit (ADF paper chute): Refer to Section 5-8-1 Guide P ASSY (Sheet guide): Refer to Section 5-9-8. Feed roller cover (plate guide): Refer to Section 5-10-7. Brake roller cover: Refer to Section 7-3-3.
4	Clean the Feed rollers, Eject rollers, Plastic rollers, glass surface and paper feeding surface, and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-2-1 "Cleaning the ADF."
5	Replace Pick roller or Brake roller, and see if the error is resolved.	Check the consumable counter from the TWAIN driver screen or from the built-in Maintenance mode. When the counter exceeds the values shown in Section 7-3-1, replace Pick roller or Brake roller.
6	Is the Pick roller rotating? If not rotating, then replace the PICK Motor.	Referring to Section 6-1-2, perform the paper feeding test. PICK Motor: Refer to Section 5-9-10.
7	Check the performance of PICK sensor or TOP sensor. If not operating, then replace the sensor.	Referring to Section 6-1-2, perform the sensor test. Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the sensor installation position. PICK sensor/TOP sensor: Refer to Section 5-9-5.
8	Check the performance of the Cover Open Sensor. If not operating, then replace the sensor.	Referring to Section 6-1-2, perform the sensor test. Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the sensor installation position. Cover open sensor: Refer to Section 5-9-12.
9	Check if the Paper protection roller rotates and moves up and down smoothly. If not operating, then replace the Base Unit.	Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the installation position of the Paper protection roller. Base Unit: Refer to Section 5-9-1.
10	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	ka F	Refer t	o Revision	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka F	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			DRAW	D1DA025	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.	
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka F	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. Refer to Revision Record on page 2. Refer to Revision Record on page 2. P1PA03540-B0XX				NO				
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. [DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	5'	7/257	
Design	n July 27,	2007	K.Ol	kada	CH	IECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	3	11231

4-3-14 Frequent "J2: multi feed error"

Table 4-3-14

Item	Check items	How/where to check				
No.						
1	Do the documents satisfy paper	Refer to Section 1-1-6 and 1-1-7 for paper specification, paying				
	specification?	attention to the following points:				
		 Is multi feed error detected by paper length when scanning documents with different length? 				
		• Is there perforation in the center of documents?				
2	Clean ADF unit.	Refer to Section 7-2-1 for cleaning cycle and method. Clean the				
		area around the Pick roller, Brake roller and US Sensor with care.				
3	Replace Pick roller or Brake roller and	Check the consumable counter from the TWAIN driver screen or				
	see if the error is resolved.	from the built-in Maintenance mode. When the counter exceeds				
		the values shown in Section 7-3-1, replace Pick roller or Brake				
		roller.				
4	Check the performance of US Sensor.	Referring to Section 6-1-2, perform the sensor test.				
		Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the US sensor				
		installation position.				
		If the sensor does not operate, check is the sensor cable is				
		correctly connected, replace the US Sensor FX and then US				
		Sensor RV. (Refer to Sections 5-9-5 "US Sensor FX (Multifeed				
		detection)" and Section 5-10-7 "US Sensor RV (Multifeed				
		detection).")				

4-3-15 Error detection of "U4: Scanner Cover open"

(ERG: ADF cover opened 038002 40)

Table 4-3-15

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Is there a slip of paper left near Cover Open Sensor?	Open the ADF and check inside visually. Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the Cover Open sensor installation position.
3	Check the performance of Cover Open Sensor.	Referring to Section 6-1-2, perform the sensor test and check if the Cover open sensor operates properly. Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the Cover Open sensor installation position. If the sensor does not operate properly, check if the sensor cable is correctly connected. If the sensor is defective, replace the Base Unit. (Refer to Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit.")

With the Imprinter installed:

4-3-16 Error detection of "No paper on the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit)"

Table 4-3-16

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Is there a slip of paper left near the Empty sensor?	Open the ADF and check inside visually. Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the sensor installation position.
3	Check the performance of the Empty sensor.	Referring to Section 6-1-2, perform the sensor test. If the sensor does not operate, check if the sensor cable is correctly connected, then replace the Sensor EMP. (Refer to Section 5-10-8.)

08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.I	.Miyoshi	I.Fujic	oka Re	er to F	Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T	Γ.Anzai	I.Fujic	oka Re	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.	
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	oka Re	er to F	Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CI	CHECK	APPF	R. DE	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	50	3/257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Okad	da CH	IECK	K.Okad	а		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	30	1221

4-3-17 Frequent "U0: Shipping lock error" or "E0: Carrier drive alarm" $^{\rm Table\ 4-3-17}$

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Does the same symptom occur after unlocking the Shipping lock?	Refer to Section 2-2-2.
3	Is there abnormal noise from the FB Motor when this error occurs?	If abnormal noise is heard, go to item No.4. If there is no abnormal noise, go to item No.5 to check sensors or drive unit.
4	Does any foreign object get inside drive unit or carrier unit?	Check visually.
5	Is the Joint PCA connected correctly?	Refer to Section 5-12-10 for removal.
6	Replace the Joint PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-12-10.
7	Is the CR Belt tension loose?	Refer to a note of (2) of Section 5-5 for checking. Loose belt should be tightened.
8	Is the FB Motor cable connected?	Connect it if disconnected.
9	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11.

4-3-18 "E1/E2/E3: Optical alarm" Table 4-3-18

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	When E2 or E3 error occurs, check if the glass in the reading position dirty	Open the ADF and clean the glass. (Refer to Section 7-2-1.)
3	Is the Lamp ON? Are the cables between the Lamp and Inverter damaged? Are the connectors connected correctly?	Open the ADF and press the Cover open sensor to light the Lamp. If the Lamp does not light, replace the Lamp, and then Inverter. E1 (FB): Refer to Sections 5-12-7, 5-12-6 E2 (ADF front): Refer to Sections 5-9-4, 5-9-3 E3 (ADF back): Refer to Section 5-10-6, 5-10-5. Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the Cover Open sensor installation position.
4	Is the OPT Unit dirty? Is the CCD cable damaged? Are the connectors connected correctly?	E1 (FB): Refer to Section 5-3-1 for cleaning/checking. Referring to Section 5-12-8, check if the CR cable is damaged. E2 (ADF front): Refer to Section 5-3-1 for cleaning/checking. E3 (ADF back): Refer to Section 5-3-1 for cleaning/checking.
5	When the error is E2 (ADF front), check if the glass and white reference sheet inside of the Base Unit are dirty.	White reference sheet inside of the Base Unit: Section 5-3-5.
6	When the error is E3 (ADF back), check if the glass and white reference sheet inside of the Upper Unit are dirty.	White reference sheet inside of the Upper Unit: Section 5-3-6.
7	Replace OPT Unit and see if the error is resolved.	E1 (FB): Refer to Section 5-12-5. E2 (ADF front): Refer to Section 5-9-6. E3 (ADF back): Refer to Section 5-10-4.
8	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			CUST.	
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	lo. PTPAU354U-BUXX/6			
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK .	APPR	. DESC	DESCRIPTION		DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	50	9/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	35	11231

4-3-19 "E6: Operator panel alarm"

Table 4-3-19

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it
	turning OFF and ON the scanner?	OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to
		turn the scanner ON.
2	Is the cable connected correctly?	Refer to Section 5-10-9 "Panel PCA."
3	It seems the installed Panel PCA has	Replace the Panel PCA with new one after saving the EEPROM data.
	been used in other scanner before and it	Then conduct Maintenance mode #7 by referring to Section 6-1-8.
	may be faulty one. Replace it with the	
	new Panel PCA.	

4-3-20 "E7: EEPROM alarm"

Table 4-3-20

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Is the cable connected correctly?	Refer to Section 5-10-9 "Panel PCA."
3	Replace the Panel PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-10-9 for replacement.
4	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11 for replacement.

4-3-21 "E8: SCSI alarm"

Table 4-3-21

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to
	turning OFF and ON the scanner?	turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the
		power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Check if the SCSI cable or other SCSI	The scanner can work even after this error occurs.
	devices connected to the scanner cause	Go to item 3 if you want to remove this error.
	this error.	·
3	Replace the Control PCA and see if the	Refer to Section 5-11 for replacement.
	error is resolved.	-

4-3-22 "E9: Image memory alarm"

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the
		power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Replace the Control PCA and see if the	Refer to Section 5-11 for replacement.
	error is resolved.	

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	P1PA03540-B0XX/6			
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK /	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	ULIMITED Page 60/257		1/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	00	J1 431

4-3-23 "F4: Background changeover unit alarm"

Table 4-3-23

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to
	turning OFF and ON the scanner?	turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the
		power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Are the cables between the Control PCA	Refer to Section 5-9-7 for checking.
	and the BW Motor damaged? Or are the	
	connectors connected correctly?	
3	Is the white reference work properly?	Refer to Section 6-1-2 for background changeover test.
	If not, then replace the BW Motor.	Refer to Section 5-9-7.
4	Is the OPT Unit installed correctly?	ADF (Front): Refer to Section 5-9-6.
		ADF (Back): Refer to Section 5-10-4.
		FB: Refer to Section 5-12-5.
5 08	Are the cables between the Control PCA	ADF (Front): Refer to Section 5-9-3.
	and the Inverter, and the cables between	ADF (Back): Refer to Section 5-10-5.
	the Lamp and Inverter damaged? Or are	FB: Refer to Section 5-12-6.
	the connectors connected correctly?	
6 08	Is the Lamp ON?	ADF (Front): Refer to Section 5-9-3.
	If not, replace the Inverter.	ADF (Back): Refer to Section 5-10-5.
	•	FB: Refer to Section 5-12-6.
7	Replace the Control PCA and see if the	Refer to Section 5-11.
	error is resolved.	
8	Replace the OPT Unit and see if the	ADF (front) scanning: Refer to Section 5-9-6.
	error is resolved.	ADF (back) scanning: Refer to Section 5-10-4.
		FB scanning: Refer to Section 5-12-5.

4-3-24 "C0: LSI alarm"

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11 for replacement.

								TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	Y/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	7 0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIP*	PTION		DELL	LIMITED	Page	61	1/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK K.	.Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		raye	01	11231

4-3-25 "H0/H8: Motor alarm"

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No. 1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to
2	Does any foreign object get inside the Control PCA?	turn the scanner ON. Take out the Control PCA for checking (Refer to Section 5-11).
3	Are the cables between Control PCA and the motor damaged? Or are the connectors connected correctly?	Refer to the following sections for checking the cables and connectors. ADF Motor: Refer to Section 5-10-3. PICK Motor: Refer to Section 5-9-10. FB Motor: Refer to Section 5-12-3. BW Motor: Refer to Section 5-9-7.
4	Is the coil resistance of the motor normal?	Remove the motor cable to check the coil resistance between the following pins of the motor. <h0></h0>
		ADF Motor(1) Yellow – (2) Red, (3) Brown – (4) Orange Approx. 1 Ω Other matchesInfinityPICK Motor-(1) Yellow – (2) Red. (3) Brown – (4) Orange Approx. 1.05 Ω Other matchesInfinityFB MotorApprox. 5 Ω (1) Yellow – (2) Red, (3) Brown – (4) Orange Approx. 5 Ω Other matchesInfinitySBW MotorApprox. 30 Ω ± 10%(3) Yellow-(4) Orange approx. 30 Ω ± 10%Other matchesInfinity(1) Slack-(2) Brown approx. 30 Ω ± 10%(3) Yellow-(4) Orange approx. 30 Ω ± 10%Other matchesInfinity
5	Replace Control PCA and see if the error	BW Motor: Refer to Section 5-9-7. Refer to Section 5-11 for replacement.
	is resolved.	

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	PIPAU354U-BUXA/6			
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN (CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	6	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	02	21231

4-3-26 "Lamp alarm"

Table 3-3-26

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Does any foreign object get inside the Control PCA?	Take out the Control PCA for checking (Refer to Section 5-11).
3	Are the cables between Control PCA and the lamps damaged? Or are the connectors connected correctly?	Refer to the following sections for checking the cables and connectors. Lamp (ADF front): Refer to Section 5-9-4. Lamp (ADF back): Refer to Section 5-10-6. Lamp (FB): Refer to Section 5-12-7.
4	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11 for replacement.

4-3-27 "L6: US sensor alarm"

Table 4-3-27

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
	Does the same symptom occur after	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to
1	turning OFF and ON the scanner?	turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the
	-	power button to turn the scanner ON.
	Check the US Sensor operation.	Conduct Maintenance mode (refer to Section 6-1-2) to see if
		the US sensor works properly.
		If the error still occurs, confirm that the sensor cable is
2		correctly connected. And then replace the US Sensor FX and
		US Sensor RV. (Refer to Sections 5-9-5 "US Sensor FX
		(Multifeed detection)" and Section 5-10-7 "US Sensor RV
		(Multifeed detection).")

4-3-28 "F: ROM sum check alarm"

Table 4-3-28

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11 for replacement.

4-3-29 Driver error

Table 4-3-29

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Is the connector between the scanner and the PC correctly connected?	Refer to Section 2-2-2.
3	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11 for replacement.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi I	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614P Maintenance Manual			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I.	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST				CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK A	APPR.	DESC	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	63	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	0.3	01231

4-3-30 "Abnormal command"

Table 4-3-30

Item	Check items	How/where to check						
No.								
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.						
2	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11 for replacement.						

4-3-31 "Interface alarm"

Table 4-3-31

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11 for replacement.

4-3-32 Frequent "J1: paper jam" error at Imprinter (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130 (ERG: Document jam 038001 5A)

Table 4-3-32

Item	Check items	How/where to check					
No.							
1	If the EXT cable of the Imprinter connected to the scanner properly?	Refer to step 6 of Section 8-3-2 for the EXT cable.					
2	Clean the Imprinter roller and see if the error is resolved.	Cleaning the Imprinter roller: Refer to Section 8-9-3.					
3	Check of the sensor lever moves smoothly. If it does not move smoothly, reinstall the sensor correctly.	Refer to Section 8-6-10. Replace the Sensor if damaged.					
4	If the Imprinter roller does not rotate, replace the LF Motor.	Refer to Section 8-6-12.					
5	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA (IMP CT).	Refer to Section 8-6-9.					

4-3-33 Error detection of "U5:Imprinter cover open" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130 (ERG: ADF cover opened 038002 4A)

Table 4-3-33

1 abic 4	3 33	
Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the same symptom occur after	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to
	turning OFF and ON the scanner?	turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the
		power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Is there a slip of paper left near the	Open the Imprinter cover and check inside visually.
	Imprinter cover open sensor?	Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the Imprinter
		Cover Open sensor installation position.
3	Check if the Switch of the Imprinter	Referring to Section 6-1-2, perform the sensor test and check if
	performs correctly.	the Imprinter Cover open sensor operates properly.
		Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the Imprinter
		Cover Open sensor installation position.
		If the sensor does not operate properly, check if the sensor
		cable is correctly connected. If the sensor is defective, replace
		the Switch. (Refer to Section 8-6-11 "Switch (Cover open
		detection).")

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda <i>i</i>	A.Miyos	hi I.Fuji	oka Re	fer to	Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614 Maintenance Manual			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	i I.Fuji	oka Re	fer to	Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CU				CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	i I.Fuji	oka Re	fer to	Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHEC	(APP	R. DE	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	6/	1/257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Ok	kada	CHECK	K.Okad	a		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	0-	+1231

4-3-34 Imprinter does not initially operate (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130

Table 4-3-34

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Check if the Imprinter EXT cable is	Refer to step 6 in Section 8-3-2 for the EXT cable.
	correctly connected to the scanner.	
2	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA	Refer to Section 8-6-9.
	(IMP CT) and see if the error is resolved.	
3	Replace the Scanner Control PCA.	Refer to Section 5-11.

4-3-35 "U6: No print cartridge" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130

Table 4-3-35

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Check if the Print cartridge is correctly installed.	Refer to Section 8-3-3.
2	Remove the Print cartridge and check if the electrode at the attaching area is dirty.	Clean it if dirty by referring to Section 8-9-1.
3	Replace the Print cartridge and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 8-9-4.
4	The performance between the Print cartridge and Imprinter Control PCA (IMP CT) may be defective. Check the connection of the parts on the right and replace them if necessary.	The parts that may need to be replaced: IM Holder ASSY3 (Section 8-6-8) PR Harness (Section 8-6-13) IMP JNT (Section 8-6-7)
5	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA (IMP CT) and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 8-6-9.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi I	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614P Maintenance Manual			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I.	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST				CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK A	APPR.	DESC	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	64	5/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	0.	01201

4-3-36 "H6: Imprinter fuse blown" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130

Table 4-3-36

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check visibly if there are any foreign objects around Imprinter connector on the Scanner Control PCA.	Imprinter connecter on Control PCA
2	Check visibly if there are any foreign objects on the Imprinter Control PCA (IMP CT)	Refer to Section 8-6-9.
3	Check visibly if there are any problems on the FPC Cable (print head cable) or LF motor cable.	LF motor cable
4	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA (IMP CT) and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 8-6-9.
5	Replace the Scanner Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11.

4-3-37 "A0: Imprinter control board alarm" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130

- "A1: Imprinter communication timeout" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130
- "A2: Ink head alarm" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130
- "A3: Imprinter EEPROM alarm" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130
- "A4: Imprinter ROM alarm" (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130

Table 4-3-37

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check if the Print cartridge is installed	Refer to Section 8-3-3.
1	properly.	Refer to Section 6-3-3.
2	Replace the Print cartridge and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 8-9-4.
3	Connect the EXT cable from the Imprinter correctly and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to step 6 in Section 8-3-2 for the EXT cable.
4	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
5	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA (IMP CT) and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 8-6-9.
6	Replace the Scanner Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614P Maintenance Manual			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	W P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	61	6/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	00	01231

4-3-38 No printing / Printed letters are distorted (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130

Table 4-3-38

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Check if the screen on the Section 8-9-4	If the screen appears, replace the print cartridge (Refer to
	is displayed.	Section 8-9-4).
2	Turn ON/OFF the power several times	
	and perform printing. Does the same	
	symptom occur?	
	(Be sure that the scanner becomes	
	"Ready" before turning it OFF.)	
3	Clean the nozzle of the Print cartridge	Refer to Section 8-9-1.
	and see if the error is resolved.	
4	The performance between the Print	The parts that may need to be replaced:
	cartridge and Imprinter Control PCA	IM Holder ASSY3 (Section 8-6-8)
	(IMP CT) may be defective. Check the	PR Harness (Section 8-6-13)
	connection of the parts on the right and	IMP JNT (Section 8-6-7)
	replace them if necessary.	

4-3-39 Print form is dirty (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130

Table 4-3-39

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Is the Imprinter unit dirty by ink? Open the printing section to check it.	Refer to the following sections to clean up. Sections 8-9-1, 8-9-2, 8-9-3
2	Replace the IM Felt.	Refer to Section 8-6-14.

4-3-40 Printing is interrupted in process (with Imprinter installed) fi-6140/fi-6130

Table 4-3-40

Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Check if the printing position is specified within the printable area. (Refer to Section 8-1-1 for Printing area, and Section 8-8-3 for print setting.) Is the appropriate size (length) of paper used?	Check if the printing section or length is out of the printing area.
2	The performance between the Print cartridge and Imprinter Control PCA (IMP CT) may be defective. Check the connection of the parts on the right and replace them if necessary.	The parts that may need to be replaced: IM Holder ASSY3 (Section 8-6-8) PR Harness (Section 8-6-13) IMP JNT (Section 8-6-9)
3	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA (IMP CT) and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 8-6-9.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. DES	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	6'	7/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CH	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		Page	0	11231



06 4-3-41 Frequent "J0: paper jam" (paper protection function) fi-6140/fi-6240

Paper protection function:

Detects folded documents or nonconforming thin paper, and cancels scanning.

Table 4-3-41

1 able 4		
Item	Check items	How/where to check
No.		
1	Does the document satisfy the paper specification?	Refer to Section 1-1-6.
2	Have the documents been jogged?	 Align the edge of documents for stable paper feeding. Remove documents with crease or dog-ear. Scanning different width of documents may cause skew and result in paper jam.
3	Are Chuter Unit (ADF paper chute), Guide P ASSY (Sheet guide), Feed roller cover (plate guide) and Brake roller cover installed correctly?	Chuter Unit (ADF paper chute): Refer to Section 5-8-1 Guide P ASSY (Sheet guide): Refer to Section 5-9-8. Feed roller cover (plate guide): Refer to Section 5-10-7. Brake roller cover: Refer to Section 7-3-3.
4	Replace Pick roller or Brake roller, and see if the error is resolved.	Check the consumable counter from the TWAIN driver screen or from the built-in Maintenance mode. When the counter exceeds the values shown in Section 7-3-1, replace Pick roller or Brake roller.
5	Check the performance of PICK sensor or TOP sensor. If not operating, then replace the sensor.	Referring to Section 6-1-2, perform the sensor test. Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the sensor installation position. PICK sensor/TOP sensor: Refer to Section 5-9-5.
6	Check the performance of the Cover Open Sensor. If not operating, then replace the sensor.	Referring to Section 6-1-2, perform the sensor test. Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the sensor installation position. Cover open sensor: Refer to Section 5-9-12.
7	Check if the Paper protection roller rotates and moves up and down smoothly. If not operating, then replace the Base Unit.	Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the installation position of the Paper protection roller. Base Unit: Refer to Section 5-9-1.
8	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 5-11.

								TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
80	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on p	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on p	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	Y/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on p	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIP	TION		DELL	LIMITED	Page	65	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK K.	Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		raye	00	31 431

Chapter 5 Disassembly/Assembly

This chapter describes how to replace the maintenance parts, and clean the scanner to ensure the normal operations. When assembling the maintenance parts, conduct necessary cleaning when instructed in this manual.

5-1 For the safety operation

Please read this page carefully before disassembling or assembling.



Electric shock

Before disassembling and assembling, turn the power switch off, and unplug the AC power source from the outlet. If you do not do this, an electric shock may occur.

↑ CAUTION

Injury

Be careful not to get your fingers, hair, clothes or accessories caught in a moving part. It may cause injury.

Machine damage

Static Electricity may cause the damage to the scanner.

When repairing the scanner, wear a wrist strap to avoid ESD.

Notes when cleaning

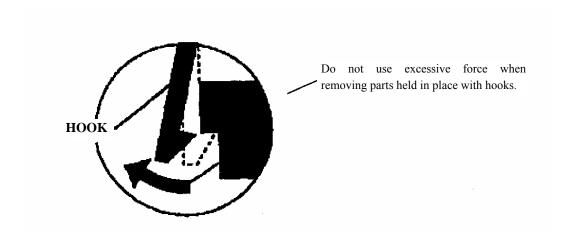
When cleaning the scanner, be careful not to allow foreign matter, such as dried ink and toner, to fall inside the scanner.

How to unlock Plastic hooks

Many parts of the scanner are held in place with plastic hooks.

When removing parts that are held in place with hooks, be very careful not to break the hooks.

Pull out the latch to unlock, then pull up on the assembly to remove.



									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240)/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miy	oshi I.Fu	ioka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				Maintenan	nce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ioka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ioka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK APF	R. DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Page	60	9/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		raye	0	11231

5-2 Periodic Maintenance

This scanner is recommended to have periodic maintenance according to the following cycle.

Item	Maintenance cycle
Periodic maintenance	Every 12 months

At maintenance, check the following parts and clean if dirty.

- OPT Unit (Common to ADF front side, ADF backside, and Flatbed) (Refer to Section 5-3-1)
- Glass inside of Base Unit (Refer to Section 5-3-2)
- Glass inside of Upper Unit (Refer to Section 5-3-3)
- Glass inside of Flatbed (Refer to Section 5-3-4) fi-6240/fi-6230
- White reference sheet inside of Base Unit (Refer to Section 5-3-5)
- White reference sheet inside of Upper Unit (Refer to Section 5-3-6)

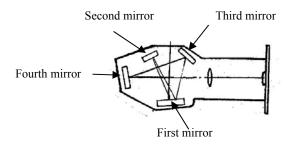
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK .	APPR	. DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	70)/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	/(11231

5-3 Cleaning

5-3-1 OPT Unit (common to ADF front/backside and Flatbed)

Follow the procedure below to clean the OPT Unit.

- 1) Referring to disassembly/assembly procedure of the OPT Unit, remove the OPT Unit (of ADF front/backside, FB).
- 2) Clean the mirrors (especially the first mirror shown below) inside of the OPT Unit with a blower brush only. Do NOT apply external force by wiping with a cloth directly.
- 3) After cleaning, install the OPT Unit in the reverse order of removal.





- 1. Wiping the mirror with cleaning liquid such as alcohol may leave the residues on the mirrors.
- 2. Reflecting sides of the mirrors (aluminum vapor deposition part) face inside of the OPT Unit.
- 3. Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.
- 4. Do NOT apply external force to the OPT frame, Mirror, Mirror holder and CCD board.

5-3-2 Glass inside of Base Unit

Follow the procedure below to clean the glass inside of the Base Unit.

- 4) Referring to Section 5-9-4 "Lamp (for front side scanning)," remove the Lamp.
- 5) Clean inside of the glass of Base Unit with a cloth moistened with alcohol. Be sure that no fabric from the cloth remains on the glass surface and that the glass is cleaned evenly.
- 6) After cleaning, install the Lamp in the reverse order of removal.

NOTICE

- 1. Take care not to damage the Lamp as it is thin.
- 2. Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.
- 3. Do NOT apply external force to the OPT frame, Mirror, Mirror holder and CCD board.

5-3-3 Glass inside of Upper Unit

Follow the procedure below to clean the glass inside of the Upper Unit.

- 1) Referring to Section 5-10-6 "Lamp (for backside scanning)," remove the Lamp.
- 2) Clean inside of the glass of the Upper Unit with a cloth moistened with alcohol. Be sure that no fabric from the cloth remains on the glass surface and that the glass is cleaned evenly.
- 3) After cleaning, install the Lamp in the reverse order of removal.

NOTICE

- 1. Take care not to damage the Lamp as it is thin.
- 2. Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.
- 3. Do NOT apply external force to the OPT frame, Mirror, Mirror holder and CCD board.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPR	. DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	7	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	/	1/23/

5-3-4 Glass inside of Flatbed fi-6240/fi-6230

Follow the procedure below to clean the glass inside of the Flatbed.

- 1) Referring to Section 5 12 7 "Lamp (fi 6240/fi 6230)," remove the Lamp.
- 1) Referring to Section 5-12-1, remove the FB Top cover.
- 2) Clean inside of the glass of the OPT BOX Unit FB Top Cover with a cloth moistened with alcohol. Be sure that no fabric from the cloth remains on the glass surface and that the glass is cleaned evenly.
- 3) After cleaning, install the Lamp in the reverse order of removal.

NOTICE

- 1. Take care not to damage the Lamp as it is thin.
- 2. Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.
- 3. Do NOT apply external force to the OPT frame, Mirror, Mirror holder and CCD board.

5-3-5 White reference inside of Base Unit

Follow the procedure below to clean the white reference inside of the Base Unit.

- 1) Referring to Section 5-9-4 "Lamp (fro front side scanning)," remove the Lamp.
- 2) Rotate the white reference sheet of the Base Unit 90 degrees, and clean it with a cloth moistened with alcohol or a blower brush. Be sure that no fabric from the cloth remains on the white reference sheet and that white reference sheet is cleaned evenly.
- 3) After cleaning, install the Lamp in the reverse order of removal.



- 1. Take care not to damage the Lamp as it is thin.
- 2. Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.
- 3. Do NOT apply external force to the OPT frame, Mirror, Mirror holder and CCD board.

5-3-6 White reference inside of Upper Unit

Follow the procedure below to clean the white reference inside of the Upper Unit.

- 1) Referring to Section 5-10-6 "Lamp (for backside scanning)," remove the Lamp.
- 2) Rotate the white reference sheet of the Upper Unit 90 degrees, and clean it with a cloth moistened with alcohol or a blower brush. Be sure that no fabric from the cloth remains on the white reference sheet and that white reference sheet is cleaned evenly.
- 3) After cleaning, install the Lamp in the reverse order of removal.

NOTICE

- 1. Take care not to damage the Lamp as it is thin.
- 2. Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.
- 3. Do NOT apply external force to the OPT frame, Mirror, Mirror holder and CCD board.

										TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
80	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ida A.N	⁄liyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refe	rto Revision	Record on	page 2.		Maintenan	ice iviar	nuai	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida T.	Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refe	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA035	IN BNY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida T.	Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refe	rto Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+0-00	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN CH	IECK	APPF	R. DES	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Page	71	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	a CH	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	12	21231

5-4 Maintenance tool

Special tools to clean this scanner are shown in table 4-4.

Table 4-4

No.	Tools	When to use	Remarks
1	Philips screwdriver	Screwing in general	For M3, M4 screws
2	Small Philips screwdriver	Removing Control PCA I/F and BW Motor	For M2.5 screws
3	Spring balance	Adjusting belt tension	1 kg force
4	Alcohol	Cleaning	Ethyl alcohol
5	Blower brush	Cleaning mirrors, removing dust	
	Grove or cloth	Handling CR shaft	
6	Small flat-blade screwdriver	Removing sensors and connectors	
7	White level adjustment	White level adjustment	Part number: PA03277-Y123
	sheet	(Section 6-1-5)	Purchase this sheet prior to maintenance.
8	Magnification/Offset	Magnification/Offset adjustment	Prepare the sheet described in Figure 6-1-3
	adjustment sheet	(Sections 6-1-3, 6-1-4)	(Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2") in
			advance.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	D1DA025	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	—				
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN (CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	73	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	/3	01201

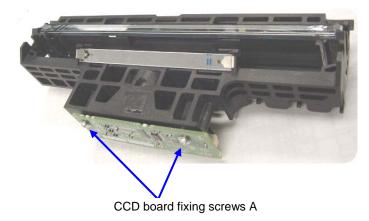
5-5 Parts that should not be Disassembled

NOTICE

- The following screws are adjusted and secured at shipment from factory. Do not attempt to disassemble nor loose them.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

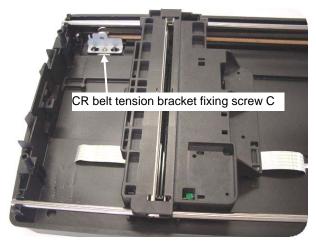
(1) OPT Unit

Do not disassemble any screws and any parts (including printed board and mirrors) of the OPT Unit.

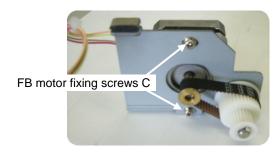


(2) CR Belt tension bracket fixing screw fi-6240/fi-6230

If you have accidentally loosened this screw, adjust the belt tension referring to <Installation> of Section 5-12-2 "FB Motor Unit."



(3) FB Motor fixing screws fi-6240/fi-6230



5-6 (Reserved)

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	D1DA025	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	— P1PAU354U-BUX X/6 ⊢				
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN (CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	7/	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	/4	+1231

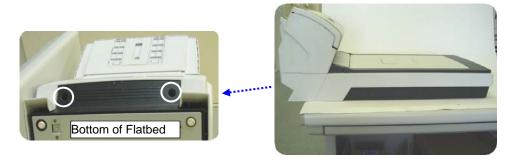
5-7 Removing Flatbed fi-6240/fi-6230

NOTICE

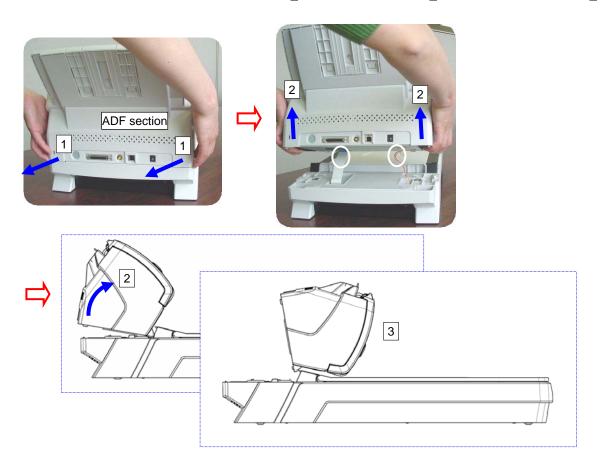
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal> 1. Remove Flatbed.

- (1) Place the scanner at the edge of a table as shown in the lower right photo.
 - Remove two screws C (circles below) at the bottom of the Flatbed.



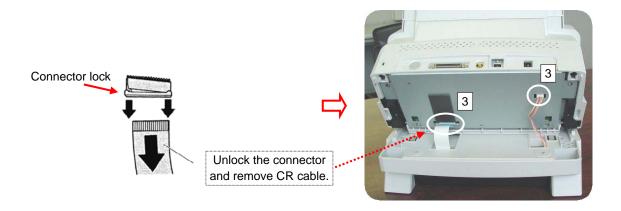
(2) Move the ADF section toward rear of the scanner [1]. Rotating the ADF section [2], place it on the Flatbed section [3].



									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to	Revision F	Record on	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ice Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to	Revision F	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	Y/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to	Revision F	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCR	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	75	5/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK K	Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	/-	51231

(3) Disconnect the CR Cable and the FB Motor Cable (circles below).

Note: Unlock the connector of the CR Cable.



<Installation>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

Note: Bury the CR cable and FB Motor cable in the hole. Do NOT pinch these cables between ADF and Flatbed sections

Note: Make sure that there is no gap between the ADF and Flatbed sections.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	74	5/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	/(31231

5-8 Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute), Stacker Unit

5-8-1 Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)

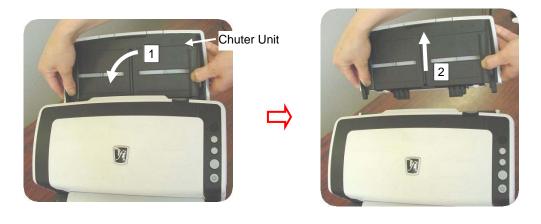
NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-17 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

1. Remove Chuter Unit (ADF paper chute).

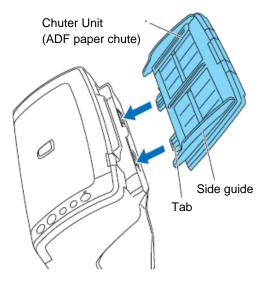
- (1) Raise the Chuter Unit (ADF paper chute) toward the front side of the scanner.
 - Lift up the Chuter Unit (ADF paper chute) 2 to remove.



<Installation>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

Hold the Chuter Unit (ADF paper chute) and insert its tabs into the corresponding slots in the scanner as shown below. The side guides of the Chuter Unit (ADF paper chute) have to face up.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	roshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	D1DA025	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	to Revision	Record on	d on page 2. P1PA03540-B0XX/6 No.					
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	7'	7/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	(.Okada	Cl	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	/	11231

5-8-2 Stacker Unit fi-6140/fi-6130

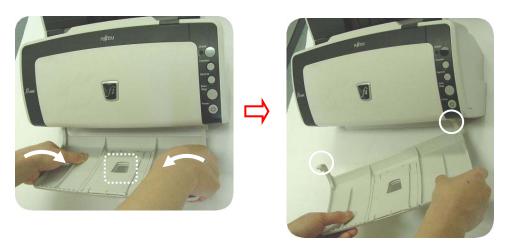
NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-13 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

1. Remove Stacker Unit.

(1) Bending the center (square below) of the Stacker Unit slightly, remove one pin (circle below) of the Stacker Unit and another, and then remove the Stacker Unit.



<Installation>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miyo	shi	I.Fujic	ıka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	D1DA025	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	— P1PΔ03540-B0XX/6 —				
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHEC	K	APPF	₹.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	79	8/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Ok	kada	CH	IECK	K.Ok	kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	/ (31231

Section 5-9-1

5-9 Base Unit

5-9-1 Base Unit

NOTICE

- Do not touch the glass at the scanning area to prevent contamination at disassembling.
- Refer to Section 3-1 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed", remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

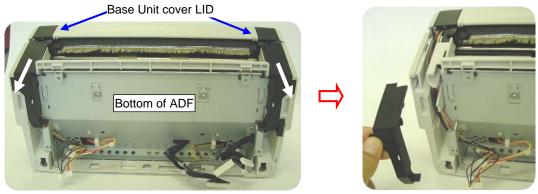
(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)", remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Control PCA.

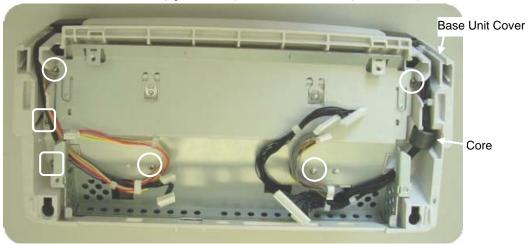
(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA", remove the Control PCA.

3. Remove Base Unit.

(3) Move two Base Unit cover LIDs at the bottom of the ADF toward the front to remove.

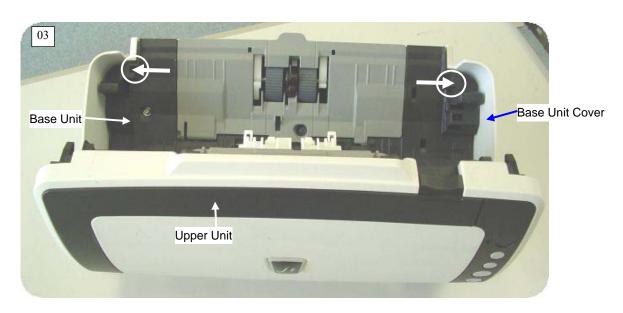


(4) Remove two screws C with washer (squares below) and four TP screws A (circles below) on the Base Unit Cover. 02



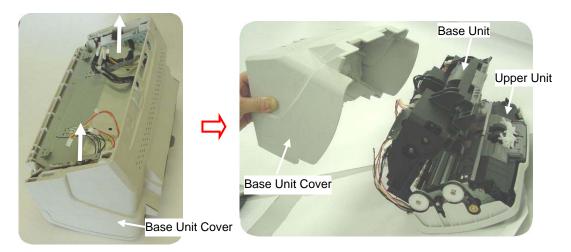
08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	D1DA025	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	— P1PAU354U-BUXX/h ⊢				
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	70	9/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	/3	71231

- (5) Open the Upper Unit.
 - Push two claws (circles below) with a flat-blade screwdriver outward to unlatch.

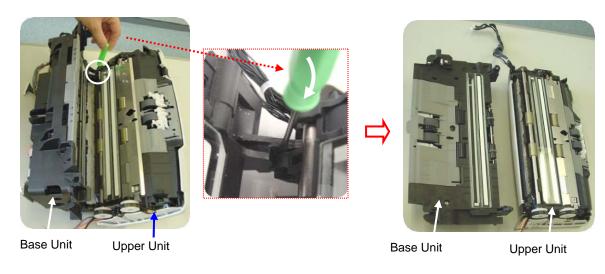


08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda /	A.Miyosh	ni I.Fujio	oka Refe	r to Revisior	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anzai	i I.Fujid	oka Refe	r to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	D1DA025	IN DAY	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anzai	i I.Fujid	P1PA():			FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ			
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHECK	APPI	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	90)/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Ok	kada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	00)1231

(6) Turn the scanner over, draw up the Base Unit Cover, and then pull eight connectors out of the holes of the Base Unit Cover.



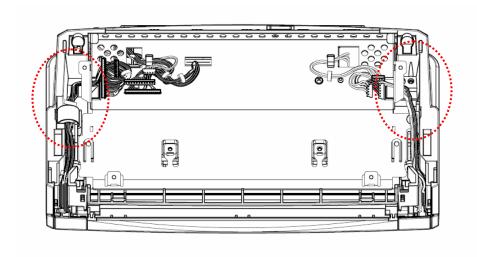
- (7) Open the Upper Unit.
 - Insert a flat-blade screwdriver into the gap (circle below) of the fulcrum pin at the Operator panel side on the Upper Unit.
 - Tilt the flat-blade screwdriver inward to unlatch the fulcrum pin, and then separate the Upper Unit and Base Unit.



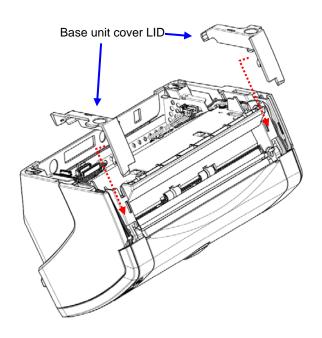
										TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	da A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.		wantenan	ice iviai	iuai	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	da T.Ar	zai	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	da T.An	zai	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	er to Revision Record on page 2. er to Revision Record on page 2.			No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK /	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION		•	DELL	LIMITED	Page	Q	1/257
Design	n July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	0.	1/23/

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

Wire the BS HARNES, SE HARNESS and ADF MOTOR HARNESS from the shield plate holes (circles below).



Be careful not to tuck down the cable when installing the Base unit Cover LID.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	,				No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	01	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	02	41231

Note: Do not be confused with the screws C with washer and the TP screws A

Note: Base Unit includes Pick roller. Referring to Section 7-3-4 "Pick roller replacement," reset the Pick roller counter.

Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.
- Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

Note: Clean the glass surface after replacing the part.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	D1DA025	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	P1PAU3540-BUX X/6			NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN (CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	93	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	0.3	31231

5-9-2 Base ASSY

// NOTICE

- The OPT Unit is not included.
- Remove the OPT Unit from the Base Unit. The remaining assembly is Base ASSY.
- Re-install the OPT Unit.
- Refer to Section 3-2 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

Remove Control PCA.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

Remove Base Unit.

(3) Referring to steps (3) ~ (8) of Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit," separate the Upper Unit and Base Unit.

4. Remove OPT Unit.

(4) Referring to step (4) of Section 5-9-6 "OPT Unit (for front side)," remove the OPT Unit.

<Installation>

Follow the above procedure in reverse

Note: Re-install the OPT Unit.

Note: Do NOT pinch the cables.

Note: Base ASSY includes Pick roller. Referring to Section 7-3-4 "Pick roller replacement," reset the Pick roller counter.

Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.
- Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

Note: Clean the glass surface after replacing the part.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	shi I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	K APP	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	0,	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	04	+1231

5-9-3 Inverter (for front side scanning)

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-3 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Control PCA.

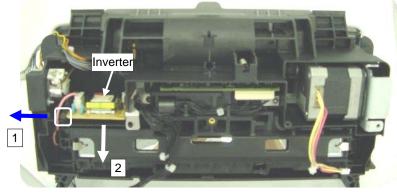
(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

3. Remove Base Unit Cover.

(3) Referring to steps (3) \sim (7) of Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit," remove the Base Unit Cover.

4. Remove Inverter.

- (4) Pushing the claw (square below) of the Inverter outward [1], draw out the Inverter [2].
 - Disconnect two cables (circles below) of the Inverter.



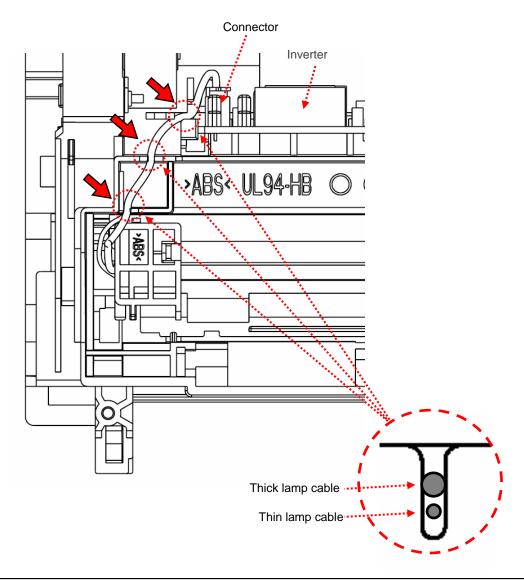




08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi I	I.Fujioł	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujioł	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujioł	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK /	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	04	5/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	0.	01231

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Wire the Lamp cable as shown below.



Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.
 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujio	oka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenar			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujio	oka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA035	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujio	oka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	GΝ	CHE	CK	APPF	₹.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	04	5/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.C)kada	CH	IECK	K.Ok	kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	00	31231

5-9-4 Lamp (for front side scanning)

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-4 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Control PCA.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

3. Remove Base Unit Cover.

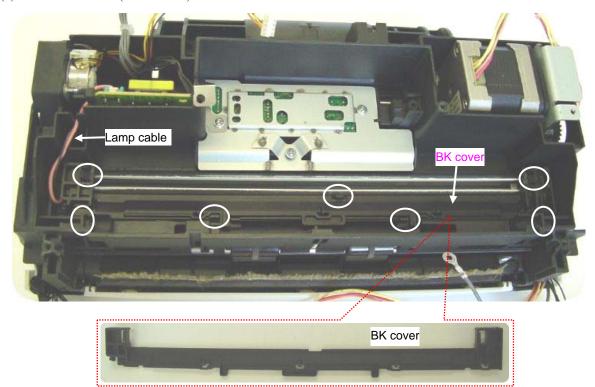
(3) Referring to steps (3) \sim (7) of Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit," remove the Base Unit Cover.

4. Remove OPT Unit.

(4) Referring to step (4) of Section 5-9-6 "OPT Unit (for front side scanning)," remove the OPT Unit.

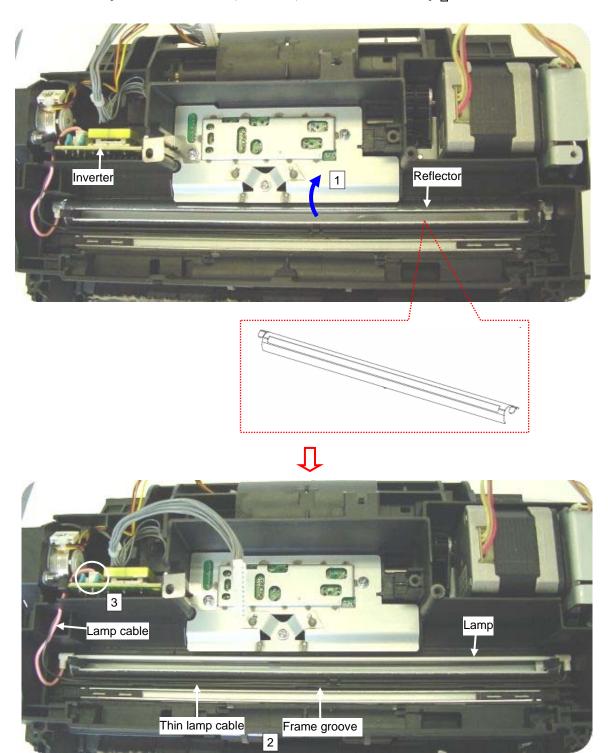
5. Remove Lamp.

(5) Unlatch seven claws (circles below) on the BK Cover to remove the BK Cover.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miye	oshi	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	I CHE	CK	APPF	R. [DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	07	7/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 k	K.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Ok	kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	0,	11231

- (6) Lift up the reflector to remove. $\boxed{1}$
 - Unhook the thin lamp cable from the groove of the frame. 2
 - Unhook the lamp cable from the Inverter (circle below), and then remove the Lamp. 3



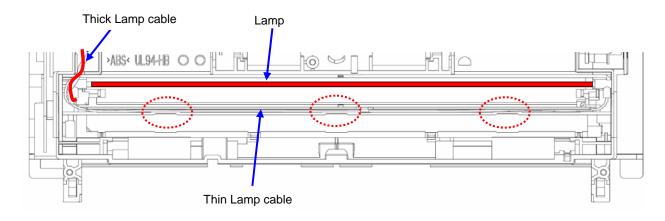
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	DECCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	00	3/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ררט		rage	00	51251

<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

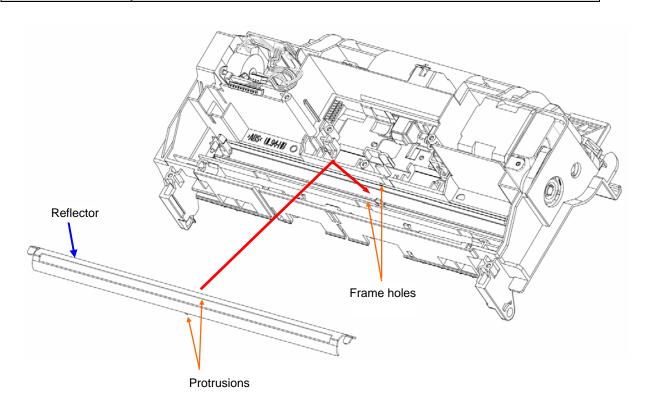
Blow out the dust inside of the Glass and the OPT Unit with air before installation.

(1) Install the Lamp to the frame, and then route the thin Lamp cable on the groove of the frame.



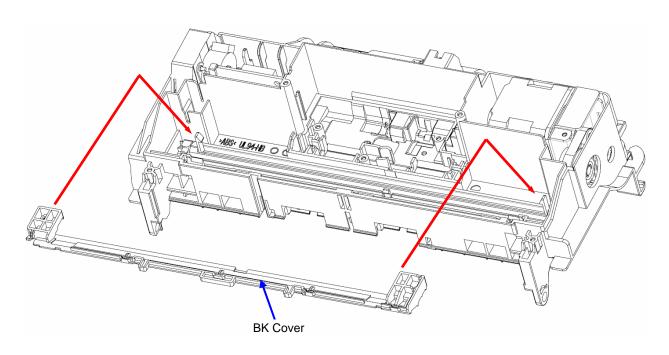
(2) Install the reflector to the frame

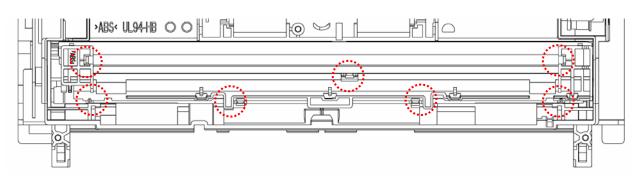
Note: Make sure that the protrusions of the reflector are inserted into the holes of the frame.



								TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to R	Revision Record on	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to R	Revision Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	Y/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to R	Revision Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	7 0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIP	PTION		DELL	LIMITED	Page	90	9/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK K.	.Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU	LIIVII I ED	raye	05	71231

(3) Install the BK Cover to the frame. Note: Make sure that seven claws are secured.

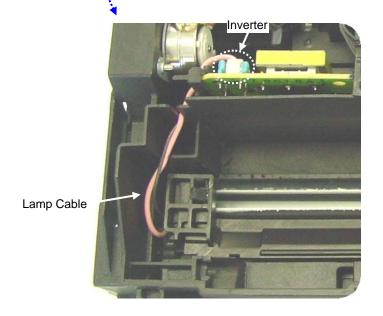




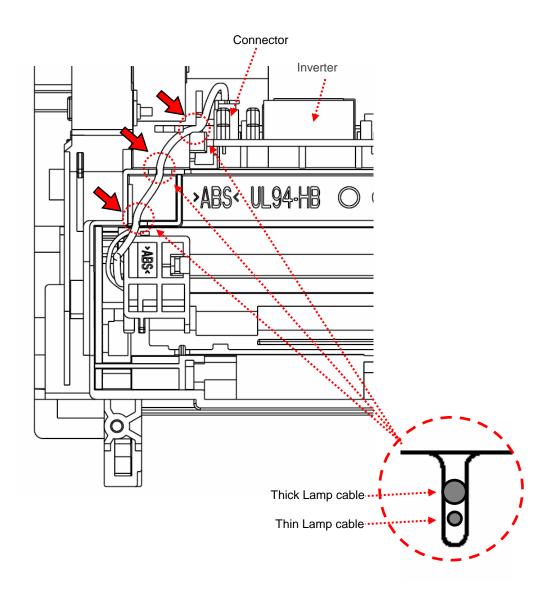
08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	da	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ıka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	da	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	da	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N.	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. D	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. DESCRIPTION				DELL	LIMITED	Page	0(0/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.O	kada	CH	IECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	90	31231

(4) Connect the Lamp cable to the Inverter (circle below).





									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 BOY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	01	1/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	91	1/23/



- Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

 Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.

 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.

 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujio	oka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenar			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujio	oka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA035	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujio	oka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	ΞN	CHE	CK	APPF	₹.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	or	2/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.C)kada	CH	HECK	K.Ok	kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		Page	92	21231

5-9-5 US Sensor FX (Multifeed detection)

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 3-5 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Control PCA.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

3. Remove Base Unit Cover.

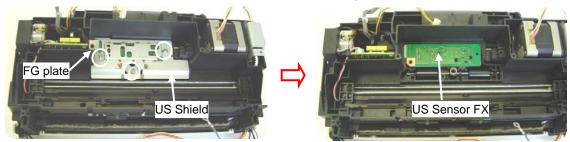
(3) Referring to steps (3) \sim (7) of Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit," remove the Base Unit Cover.

4. Remove OPT Unit.

(4) Referring to step (4) of Section 5-9-6 "OPT Unit (for front side scanning)," remove the OPT Unit.

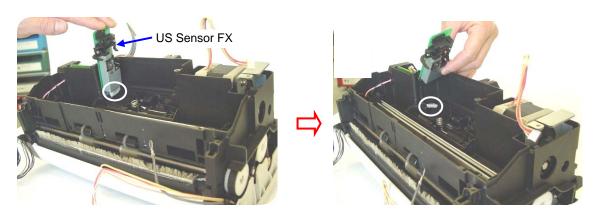
5. Remove US Sensor FX.

(5) Remove three screws A (circles below) of the US Shield and the FG plate, and then remove the US Shield.



(6) Disconnect the US Sensor FX cable (circle below), and then remove the US Sensor FX.

Note: Do not pull the cable too hard.

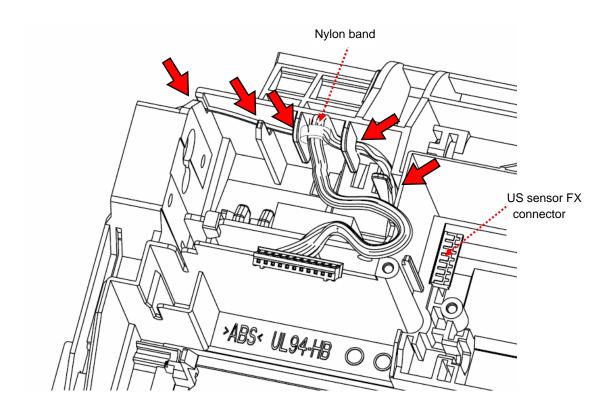


										TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miyo	oshi I.Fu	ıjioka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	nce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ıjioka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ıjioka F	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK AP	PR. [DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	03	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Ok	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	9.	51251

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

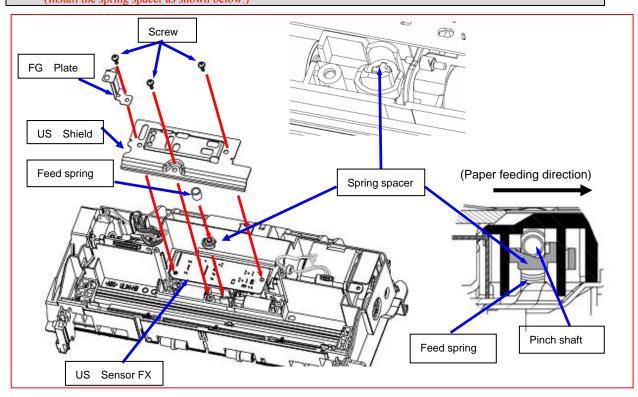
Blow out the dust inside of the Glass and the OPT Unit with air before installation.

Wire the US Sensor FX cable as shown below.



									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240)/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ice Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	Y/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+0-00	7 0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	0	4/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK K	.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	9	+1431

Note: Install the US Sensor FX as shown in the illustration below. (Install the spring spacer as shown below.)



Note: Referring to Section 6-1-2 "Maintenance Mode #1," check the sensor operation.

Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification. Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
- Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	04	5/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	9.	01231

5-9-6 OPT Unit (for front side scanning)

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 3-6 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

Remove Control PCA.

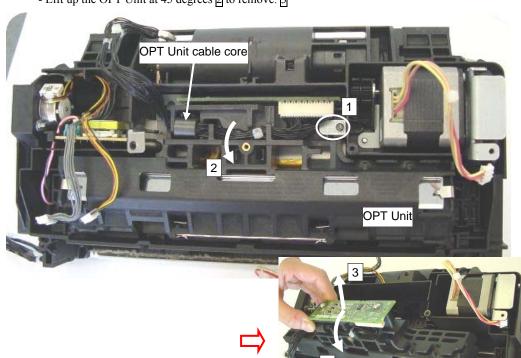
(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

3. Remove Base Unit Cover. 03

(3) Referring to steps (3) $\sim \frac{(7)}{(6)}$ (6) of Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit," remove the Base Unit Cover.

Remove OPT Unit.

(4) - Remove the screw A (circle below) on the OPT Hold plate, and then remove the OPT Hold plate. 1 - Lift up the OPT Unit at 45 degrees 2 to remove. 3



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION		_	DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	04	5/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	90	31 231

(5) Disconnect the CCD cable.

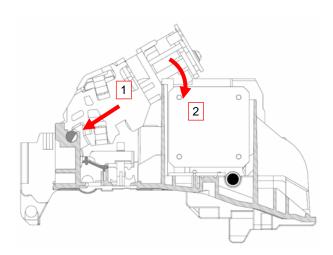
Note: Pinching the root of connector of the CCD board to support, pull out the CCD cable straight.

<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Blow out the dust inside of the Glass and the OPT Unit with air before installation.

Install the OPT Unit in the order of $1 \rightarrow 2$



Note: Face the convex side down when installing the OPT Hold Plate.

Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.
 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	oka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA035	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	or	7/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHI	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		Page	9	11231

5-9-7 BW Motor

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 3-7 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Control PCA.

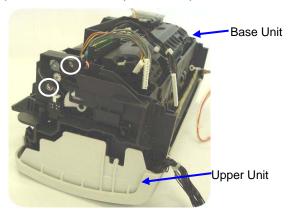
(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

3. Remove Base Unit Cover.

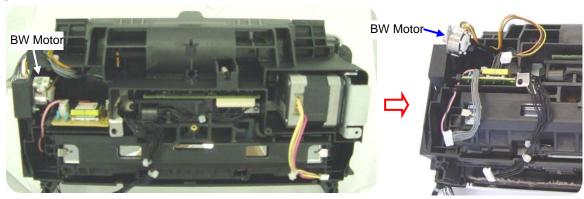
(3) Referring to steps (3) ~ (7) of Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit," remove the Base Unit Cover.

4. Remove BW Motor.

(4) Remove two screws E (circles below) of the BW Motor.



(5) Remove the BW Motor.



										TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miyo	oshi I.Fu	ıjioka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	nce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ijioka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ıjioka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK AP	PR. C	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	09	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	90	51251

<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.
 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	11116	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	00	9/257
Design	. July 27	2007 K.C	Okada CE	IFCK K	Okada		APPR	T Anzai	PFU		Page	95	91231

5-9-8 Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide)

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-8 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

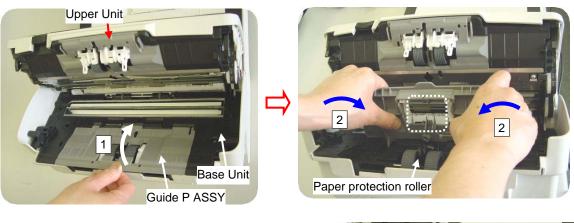
(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

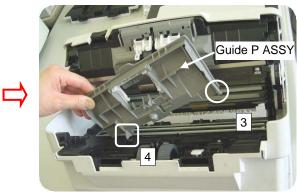
2. Remove Guide P ASSY.

- (2) Open the Upper Unit.
- (3) Lifting up the grip of the Guide P ASSY , open the Guide P ASSY.

Note: Remove the Paper protection roller from the Guide P ASSY.

- Bow the center (dotted square below) of the Guide P ASSY 2, and unlatch the pin (circle below) at the right side of the Guide P ASSY. 3
- Unlatch the pin (solid square below) at the left side of the Guide P ASSY.





 $<\!\!Installation\!\!>$

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	10	0/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	10	01231

5-9-9 PICK Motor ASSY

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 3-9 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Control PCA.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

Remove Base Unit Cover.

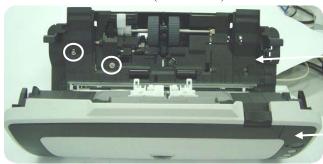
(3) Referring to steps (3) \sim (7) of Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit," remove the Base Unit Cover.

4. Remove Guide P ASSY.

(4) Referring to steps (2) ~ (3) of Section 5-9-8 "Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide)," remove the Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide).

5. Remove PICK Motor ASSY.

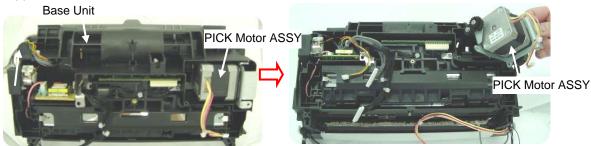
- (5) Open the Upper Unit.
 - Remove two screws C (circles below) of the PICK Motor ASSY.



Base Unit

Upper Unit

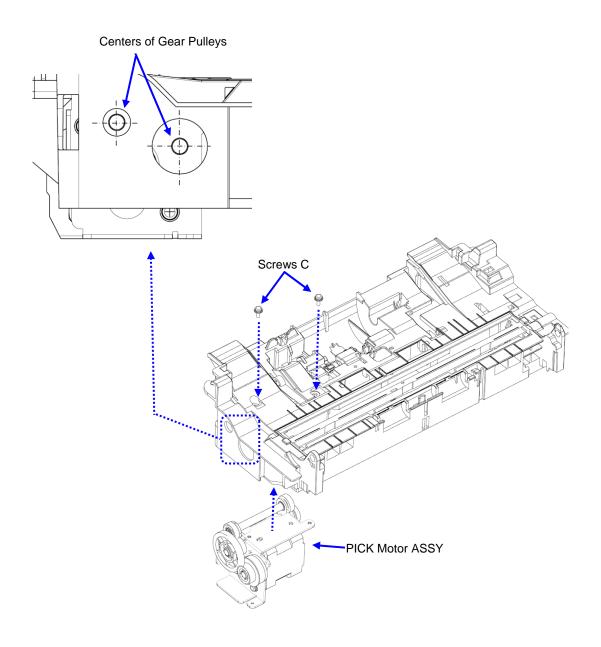
(6) - Draw the PICK Motor ASSY out of the Base Unit.



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	Miyoshi	I.Fujic	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	nda 7	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	nda 7	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	10	11/23/

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: To confirm that the Pick Motor ASSY falls into the positioning boss, make sure that the centers of the gear pulleys come to the center of the frame.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	ni I.Fujic	oka Refert	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	2/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada C	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	21231

5-9-10 PICK Motor

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 3-10 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Control PCA.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

Remove Base Unit Cover.

(3) Referring to steps (3) \sim (7) of Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit," remove the Base Unit Cover.

4. Remove Guide P ASSY.

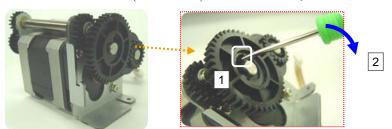
(4) Referring to steps (2) ~ (3) of Section 5-9-8 "Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide)," remove the Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide).

Remove PICK Motor ASSY.

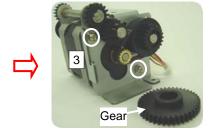
(5) Referring to (5) \sim (6) of Section 5-9-9, remove the PICK Motor ASSY.

Remove PICK Motor.

- (6) Insert the flat-blade screwdriver into the gap of the claw on the gear. 1
 - Tilt the flat-blade screwdriver inward of the gear to unlatch the claw, and then remove the gear. 2
 - Remove two screws C (circles below) on the PICK Motor, and then remove the PICK Motor. 3







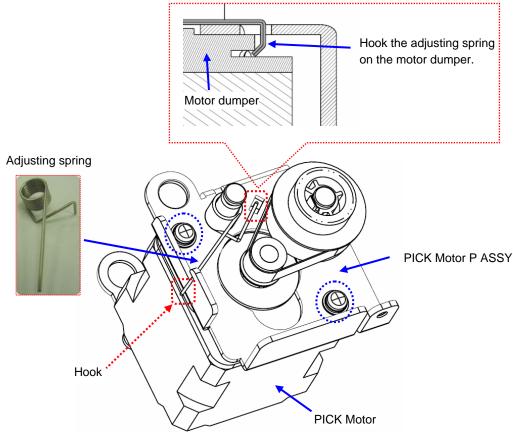


08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	la A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	la T.Ar	nzai	I.Fujic	oka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DAY	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	la T.Ar	nzai	I.Fujic	oka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	N CHE	CK	APPF	R. D	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	3/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Okada	Cl	IECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	10	31231

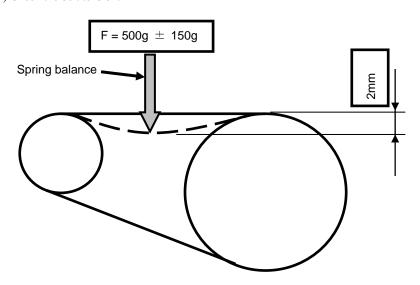
Follow the above procedure in reverse.

Note: Adjust the PICK Motor belt tension.

- (1) Place the belt tension adjusting spring that is attached to the Maintenance Part as shown below.
 - Place the PICK Motor downside. Holding the PICK Motor P ASSY, secure two screws C (circles below).
 - Remove the belt tension adjusting spring.



(2) Check the belt tension.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPR	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	4/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	10	141231

5-9-11 PICK Shaft ASSY

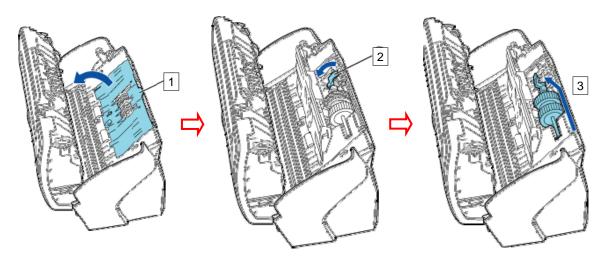
NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-11 for the part number of the replacement part.

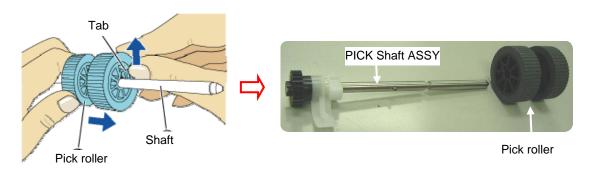
<Removal>

1. Remove the PICK Shaft ASSY.

- (1) Open the Upper Unit.
 - Lifting the grab of the Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide), open the Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide).
 - Rotate the Pick roller lever in the direction of the arrow.
 - Move the Pick roller lever in the direction of the arrow, lift it up and pull the shaft out of the hole. 3



(2) Remove the Pick roller from the shaft while lifting up the tab on the Pick roller.



<Installation>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujio	oka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenar)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujio	oka	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA035	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujio	oka	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	W0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	GΝ	CHE	CK	APPF	₹.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	5/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.C)kada	CH	HECK	K.Ok	kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	131231

5-9-12 Switch (ADF open detection)

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-12 for the parts number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

Remove Control PCA.

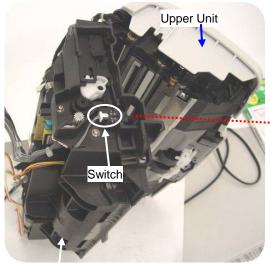
(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

3. Remove Base Unit Cover.

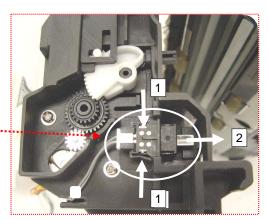
(3) Referring to steps (3) ~ (7) of Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit," remove the Base Unit Cover.

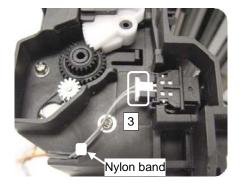
4. Remove Switch.

- (4) Open the Upper Unit.
 - Pushing the tabs at the both sides of the Switch 1, move the Switch 2, and then unlatch the tabs 3.
 - Remove the Switch, and then disconnect the Switch cable (square below).









<Installation>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION		_	DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	10	6/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		Page	10	0/23/

Section 5-10-1

5-10 Upper Unit

5-10-1 Upper Unit

NOTICE

- The Panel PCA is not included.
- Re-install the Panel PCA.
- Do not touch the glass at the scanning area to prevent contamination at disassembling.
- Refer to Section 3-13 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Control PCA.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

3. Remove Upper Unit.

(3) Referring to steps (3) ~ (8) of Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit," separate the Upper Unit and Base Unit.

Remove Panel PCA.

(4) Referring to Section 5-10-9 "Panel PCA," remove the Panel PCA.

Note: There is no need to save the EEPROM data

<Installation>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

Note: Re-install the Panel PCA.

Note: Do NOT pinch the cables.

Note: Upper Unit includes Brake roller. Referring to Section 7-3-3 "Brake roller replacement," reset the Brake roller counter.

Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.
- Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
- Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

Note: Clean the glass surface after installation.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	7/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	10	111231

5-10-2 Upper ASSY

NOTICE

- The Panel PCA and the OPT Unit are not included.
- A dummy TOP Cover is included.
- Remove OPT Unit from Upper Unit. The remaining assembly is Upper ASSY.
- Re-install the Panel PCA, OPT Unit, and the TOP Cover.
- Refer to Section 3-14 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Control PCA.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

3. Remove Upper Unit.

(3) Referring to steps (3) ~ (8) of Section 5-9-1 "Base Unit," separate the Upper Unit and Base Unit.

4. Remove Panel PCA.

(4) Referring to Section 5-10-8 "Panel PCA," remove the Panel PCA.

Note: There is no need to save the EEPROM data.

Remove Top Cover.

(5) Referring to steps (3) \sim (5) of Section 5-10-11 "Top Cover," remove the Top Cover.

Remove OPT Unit.

(6) Referring to step (4) of Section 5-10-4 "OPT Unit (for backside scanning)," remove the OPT Unit.

<Installation>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

Note: Re-install the Panel PCA, OPT Unit, and Top Cover.

Note: Do NOT pinch the cables.

Note: Upper ASSY includes Brake roller. Referring to Section 7-3-3 "Brake roller replacement," reset the Brake roller counter

Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.
- Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
- Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

Note: Clean the glass surface after replacing the part.

									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614PR			
08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miyo	oshi I.Fu	jioka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				Maintenance Manual			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	jioka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.				
06	Mar.10, 08	ar.10, 08 K.Okada		zai I.Fu	jioka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			No.	PIPAUSS4U-BUAA/0			
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK API	PR. DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Page	108/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	01231

5-10-3 ADF Motor



- Refer to Section 3-15 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.
- <Removal>

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

Remove Control PCA.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-11 "Control PCA," remove the Control PCA.

3. Remove Panel PCA cable.

(3) Referring to steps of Section 5-10-9 "Panel PCA," disconnect the Panel PCA cable.

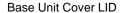
Note: There is no need to save EEPROM data.

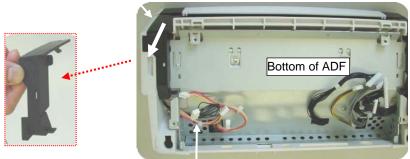
4. Remove Top Cover.

(4) Referring to steps (3) \sim (5) of Section 5-10-11 "Top Cover," remove the Top Cover.

5. Remove ADF Motor.

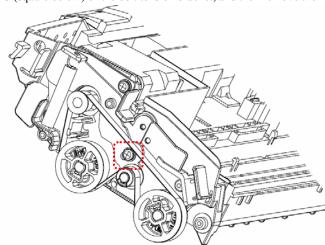
(5) Moving the ADF Motor cable side of the Base Unit cover LID at the bottom of the ADF to the front, remove the Base Unit Cover LID.





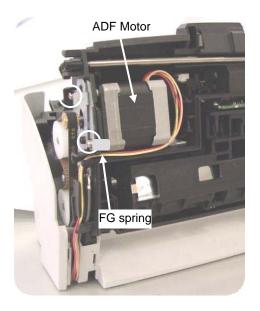
ADF Motor cable (4 pins)

- (6) Remove the ADF Motor cable from the frame hole at the bottom of the ADF. 02
- (7) Open the Upper Unit. 02
- (8) Unfasten the screw C (square below) of the belt tension bracket, and then remove the ADF Motor Belt. 02



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda	A.Miyos	hi I.Fujid	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	~ 0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	ΝÊ	CHEC	(APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	9/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.C	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	91231

(9) Remove two screws C (circles below) of the ADF Motor and FG spring, and then remove the ADF Motor. 02

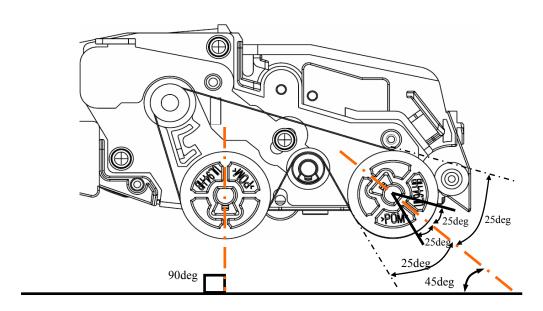


<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

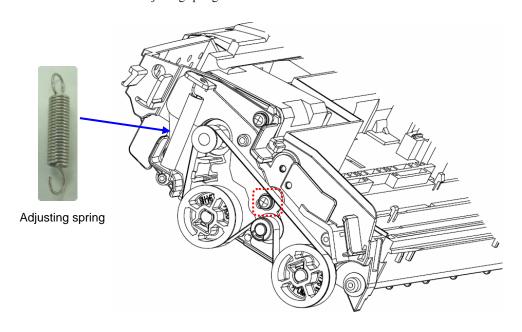
Note: Do not forget to install the FG spring.

Note: When the left pulley is 90 degrees, the right pulley must be 45 \pm 25 degrees.

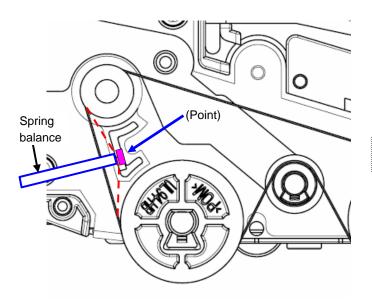


08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	ka Refe	r to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	r to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	rto Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	11	0/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CH	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	11	01231

- (1) Install the belt tension adjusting spring attached to the maintenance part as shown below.
 - Secure the screw C (square below).
 - Remove the belt tension adjusting spring.



(2) Check the belt tension.



Tension when the spring balance touches the rib: : 350gf ± 100gf 05

- Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

 Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.

 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.

 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

Note: Clean the glass surface after replacing the part

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi I	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK A	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	11	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	11	1/23/

5-10-4 OPT Unit (for backside scanning)

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 3-6 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Panel PCA cable.

(2) Referring to steps of Section 5-10-9 "Panel PCA," disconnect the Panel PCA cable.

Note: There is no need to save EEPROM data.

3. Remove Top Cover.

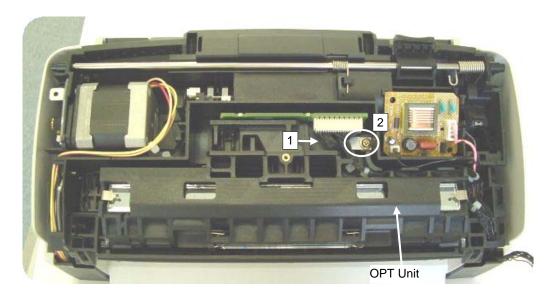
(3) Referring to steps (3) \sim (5) of Section 5-10-11 "Top Cover," remove the Top Cover.

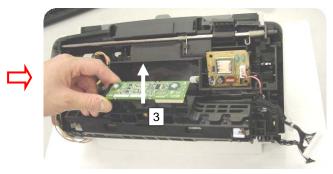
4. Remove OPT Unit.

(4) - Remove the CCD cable. 1

Note: Pinching the root of connector of the CCD board to support, pull out the CCD cable straight.

- Remove the screw A (circle below) on the OPT Hold Plate, and then remove the OPT Hold Plate. 2
- Lift up the OPT Unit 3 to remove.



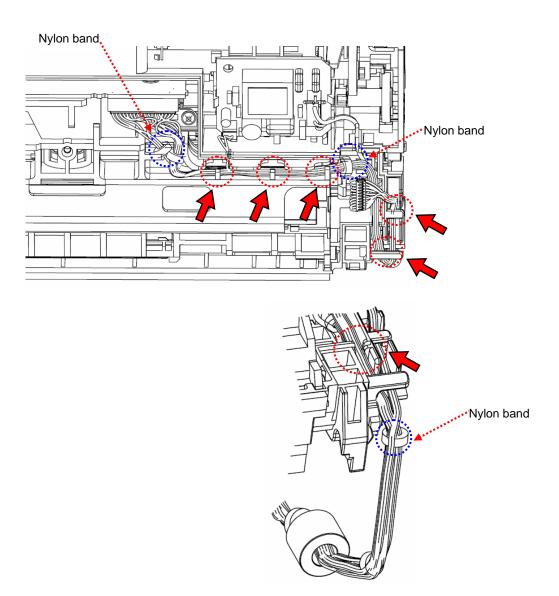


08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	roshi	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	nzai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	nzai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	N CHE	CK	APPF	R. [DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	11	2/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 I	K.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Ok	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	11	21231

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Blow out the dust inside of the Glass and the OPT Unit with air before installation.

Wire the OPT Unit cable as shown below.



Note: Face the convex side down when installing the OPT Hold Plate.

Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.
 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyosl	ni I.Fujio	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	nda	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN (CHECK	APPE	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	11	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	11	31231

5-10-5 Inverter (for backside scanning)

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-3 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Panel PCA cable.

(2) Referring to steps of Section 5-10-9 "Panel PCA," disconnect the Panel PCA cable.

Note: There is no need to save EEPROM data.

Remove Top Cover.

(3) Referring to steps (3) \sim (5) of Section 5-10-11 "Top Cover," remove the Top Cover.

4. Remove Inverter.

- (4) Remove two Inverter cables (circles below).
 - Unlatch two claws (squares below) at both sides of the Inverter to remove the Inverter.







08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPR	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	11	4/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	11	4/23/

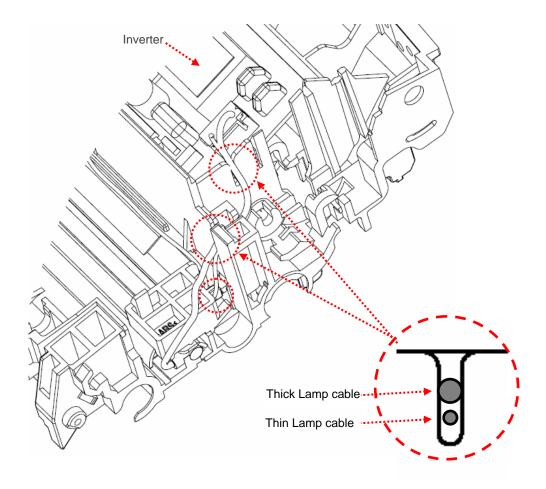
<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Make sure that the Inverter is placed under the lower hook (circle below) and the claws (squares below) at both sides of the Inverter are securely latched.



Wire the lamp cable as shown below.



Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification. Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
- Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

										TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miyo	oshi I.Fu	ıjioka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	nce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ıjioka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ıjioka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK AP	PR. [DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	11	5/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Ok	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	11	31231

5-10-6 Lamp (for backside scanning)

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-4 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Panel PCA cable.

(2) Referring to steps of Section 5-10-9 "Panel PCA," disconnect the Panel PCA cable.

Note: There is no need to save EEPROM data.

3. Remove Top Cover.

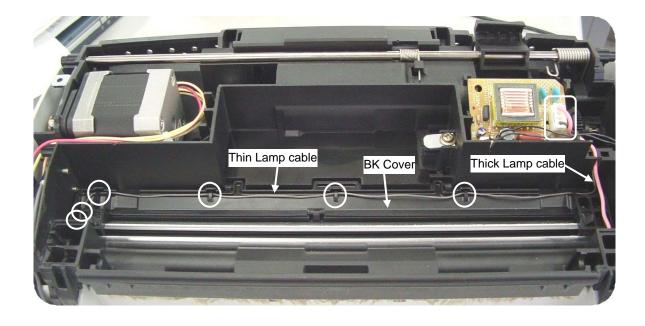
(3) Referring to steps (3) \sim (5) of Section 5-10-11 "Top Cover," remove the Top Cover.

4. Remove OPT Unit.

(4) Referring to step (4) of Section 5-10-4 "OPT Unit (for backside scanning)," remove the OPT Unit.

5. Remove Lamp.

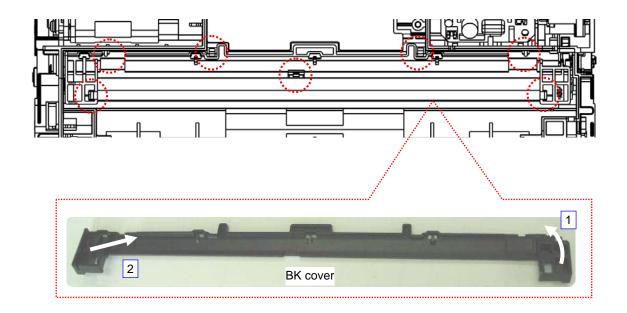
- (5) Remove the thin Lamp cable from six BK Cover hooks (circles below).
 - Disconnect the Lamp cable from the Inverter (square below).



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	Miyoshi	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	nda 7	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	nda 7	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	11	6/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	11	0/23/

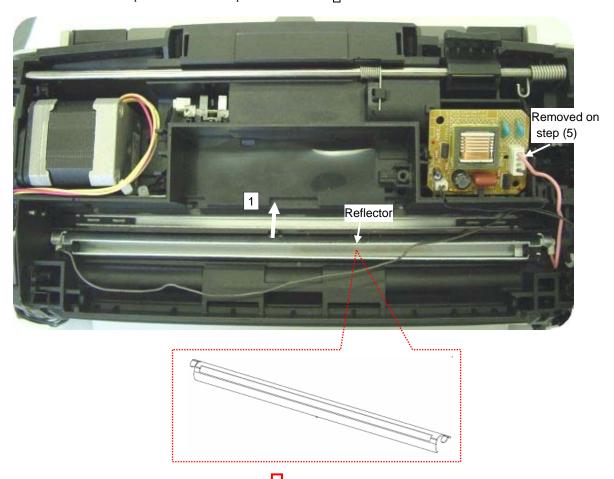
Section 5-10-6

(6) Unlatch seven hooks (circles below) on the BK Cover, and then remove the BK Cover in the order of $\boxed{1} \rightarrow \boxed{2}$.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	11	7/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	11	11231

(7) - Lift up the reflector to remove. 1 - Remove the Lamp from the thick Lamp cable side at first. 2





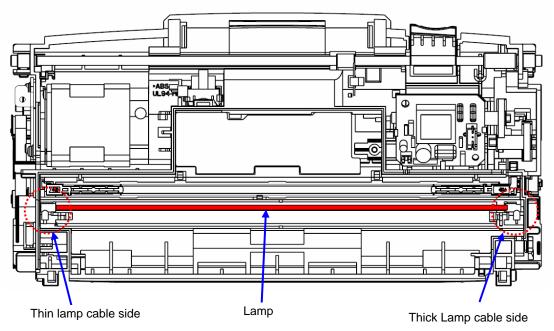
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	ni I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION		_	DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	11	8/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	11	01231

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Blow out the dust inside of the Glass and the OPT Unit with air before installation.

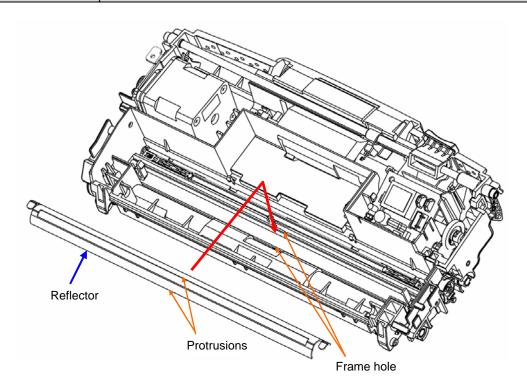
(1) Place the Lamp on the groove of the frame.

Note: Install the Lamp at the thin Lamp cable side at first.

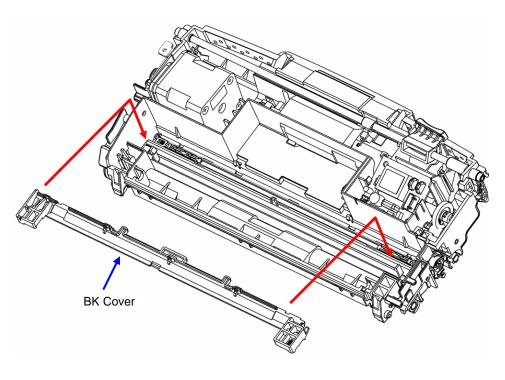


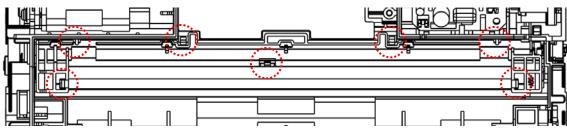
(2) Install the reflector to the frame.

Note: Make sure that the protrusions of the reflector are inserted into the holes of the frame.



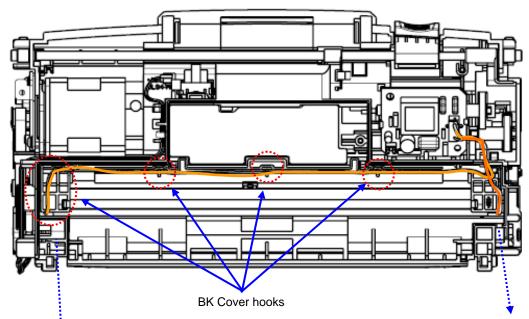
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	11	9/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	11	71231

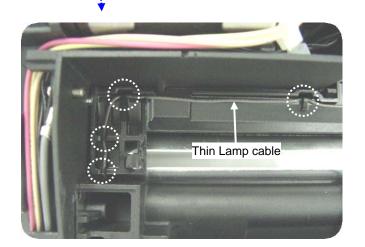


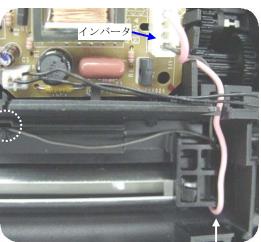


08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	nda -	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	12	0/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	12	.01231

- (4) Hook the thin Lamp cable onto six BK Cover hooks (circles below).- Connect the Lamp cable to the Inverter.



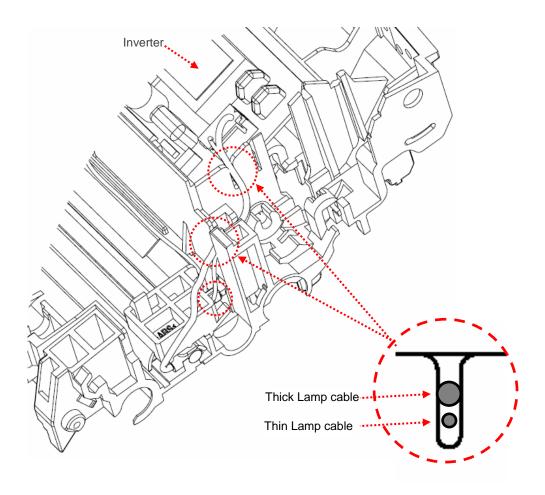




Thick Lamp cable

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	1 5				FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Page	12	1/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	12	1/23/

Wire the Lamp cable as shown below.



Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.
 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to F	Revision Recor	d on	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to R	Revision Recor	d on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 BOY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to R	Revision Recor	d on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	Λ0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIF	PTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	2/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK K.	.Okada	APF	PR.	T.Anzai	FFU	LIIVII I ED	rage	12	21231

5-10-7 US Sensor RV (Multifeed detection)

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 3-19 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

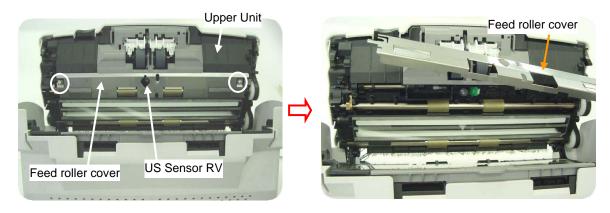
<Removal>

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

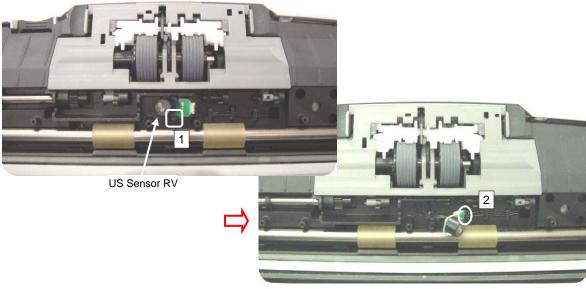
(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove US Sensor RV.

- (2) Open the Upper Unit.
 - Remove two screws A (circles below) on the Feed roller cover, and then remove the cover.



- (3) Unlatch the claw (square below) of the US Sensor RV to remove the US Sensor RV.
 - Remove US Sensor RV cable (circle below).



<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Referring to Section 6-1-2 "Maintenance Mode #1," check the sensor operation.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyos	hi I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	1 3				FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	12	3/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	12	31231

5-10-8 Sensor EMP (Paper empty detection)

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-20 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Panel PCA cable.

(2) Referring to steps of Section 5-10-9 "Panel PCA," disconnect the Panel PCA cable.

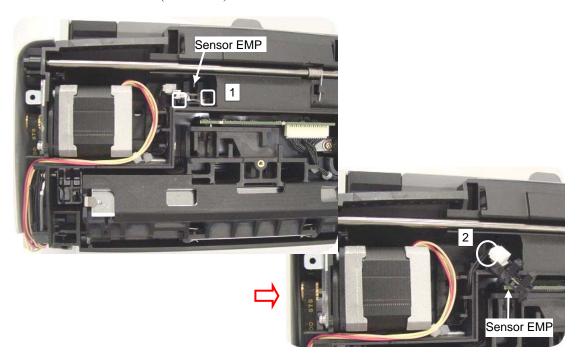
Note: There is no need to save EEPROM data.

3. Remove Top Cover.

(3) Referring to steps (3) \sim (5) of Section 5-10-11 "Top Cover," remove the Top Cover.

4. Remove Sensor EMP.

- (4) Unlatch two claws (squares below) from the right side of the Sensor EMP at first, and then remove the Sensor EMP.
 - Remove the Sensor EMP cable (circle below).



<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Make sure that the claws at both sides of the Sensor EMP are securely latched.

After replacing the part, perform the sensor test by referring to Section 6-1-2 "Maintenance Mode #1."

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK .	APPR	R. DESC	DECCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	4/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	12	41231

5-10-9 Panel PCA

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-21 for the part number of the replacement part.

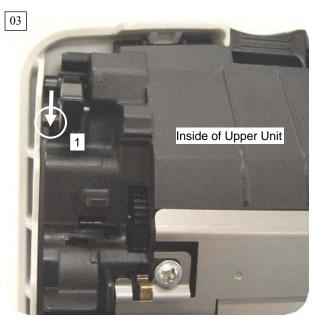
<Removal>

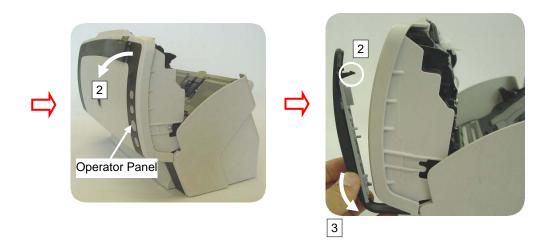
Save EEPROM data.

Referring to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data," save the EEPROM data.

1. Remove Panel PCA.

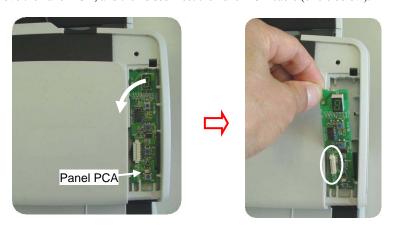
- (1) Open the Upper Unit.
 - From inside of the Upper Unit, push the claw (circle below) of the Operator Panel with a flat-blade screwdriver downward of the scanner to remove. $\boxed{1}$
 - Remove the Operator Panel in the order of $\boxed{2} \rightarrow \boxed{3}$.





08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	. 0				FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	12	5/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	12	31231

(2)Remove the Panel PCA, and then disconnect the Panel PCA cable (circle below).



<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Referring to Section 6-1-8 "EEPROM data restore," restore the EEPROM data.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi l	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK /	APPR	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	6/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	12	0/23/

5-10-10 BR Shaft ASSY

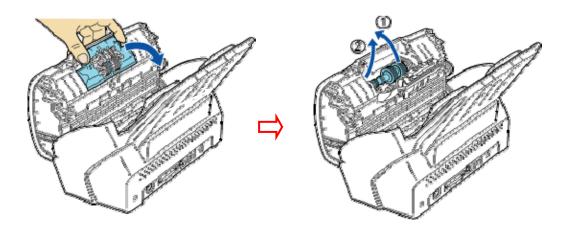
NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-22 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

1. Remove BR Shaft ASSY.

- (1) Open the Upper Unit.
 - Grab both sides of the Brake roller cover, and press to the direction of the arrow to open.
 - Lift up the right side of the Brake roller and remove the right shaft. Then pull the left shaft out of its hole to remove it.



(2) Remove the Brake roller from the RB Shaft ASSY.



Brake roller

<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN (CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	7/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	12	11231

5-10-11 Top Cover



- Top Cover is not a Maintenance Part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

2. Remove Panel PCA cable.

(2) Referring to steps of Section 5-10-9 "Panel PCA," disconnect the Panel PCA cable.

Note: There is no need to save EEPROM data.

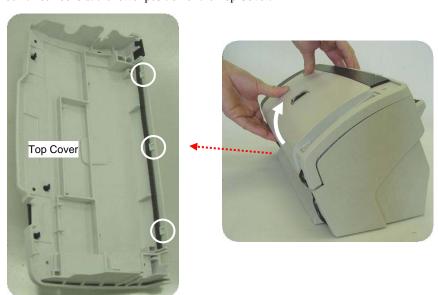
Remove Top Cover.

- (3) Open the Upper Unit.
 - Remove two screws A (circles below) at both sides of the Top Cover.



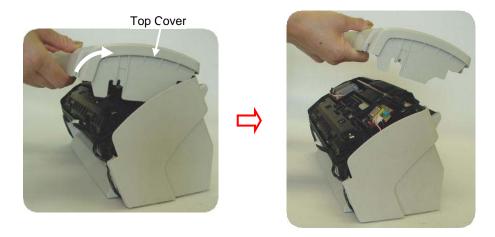
(4) - Close the Upper Unit.

- Unhook three hooks at the lower position of the Top Cover.



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	8/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	12	01231

(5) Move the Top Cover upward to remove of the Top Cover.



<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	oka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	ΒN	CHEC	CK	APPF	₹.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	9/257
Design	n July 27,	2007	K.Oł	kada	CH	IECK	K.Ok	kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	12	91231

5-11 Control PCA

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 3-23 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove the imprinter (option).

fi-6140/fi-6130 with Imprinter Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter", remove the Imprinter.

Remove Flatbed.

fi-6240/fi-6230 Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Chuter Unit.

(1) Referring to Section 5-8-1 "Chuter Unit (ADF Paper Chute)," remove the Chuter Unit.

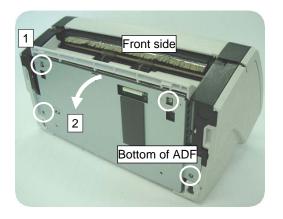
2. Remove Control PCA.

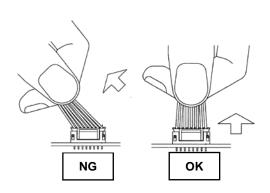
(2) - Place the ADF as shown below.

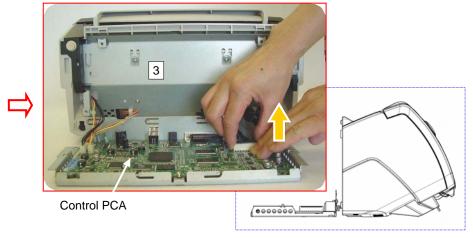
The photo below is fi-6240/fi-6230. fi-6140/fi-6130 does not have a connector at the bottom of the ADF.

- Remove four screws C (circles below) at the bottom of the ADF $\boxed{1}$, tilt the Control PCA to the front $\boxed{2}$, and then remove the Control PCA $\boxed{3}$.
- Disconnect eight cables of the Control PCA

Pressing the Control PCA with fingers to prevent it from coming loose, pull out the cables straight upward.

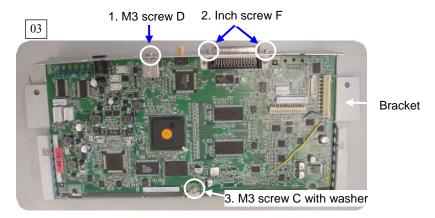






08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	roshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	I CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	12	0/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 H	K.Okada	Cl	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		Page	13	01231

(3) Remove four screws (circles below) of the Control PCA, and then remove the bracket.



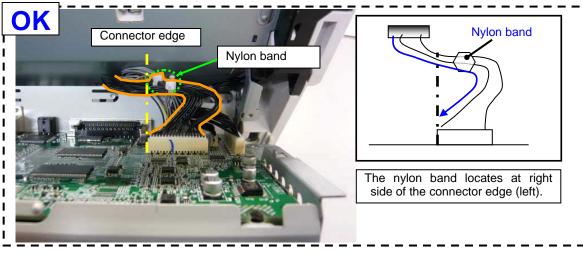
<Installation>

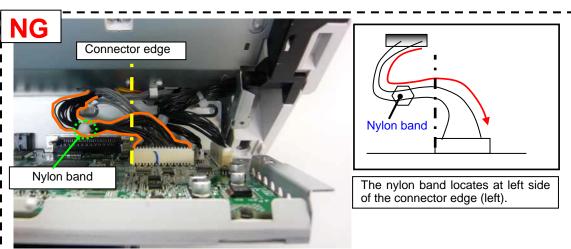
Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Tighten four screws of the Control PCA in the following order.

- 1. M3 screw D (1)
- 2. Inch screws F (2)3. M3 screw C with washer (1)

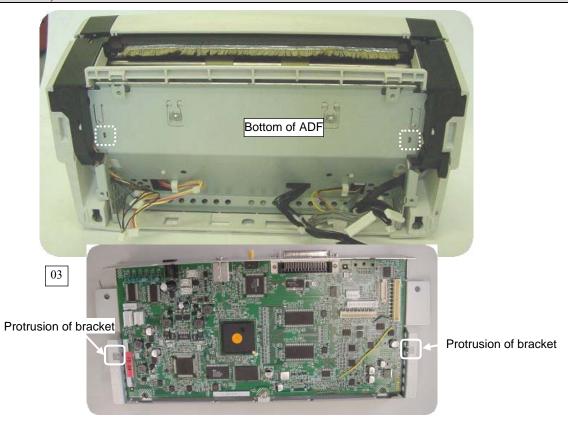
Note: Before closing the PCB unit, draw the cables to the right, and check that the nylon band is located righter than the connector edge (left edge).

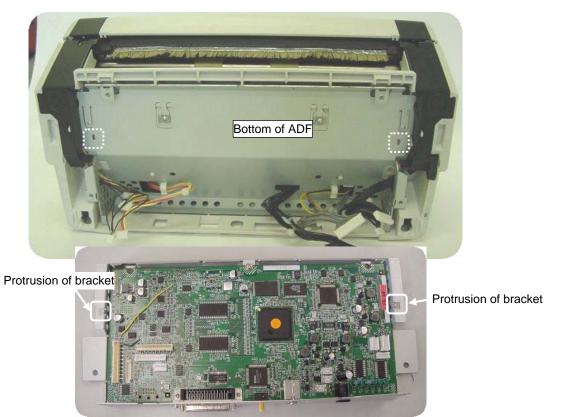




08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	1 5				FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	12	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	13	1/23/

Note: Make sure that two protrusions (solid squares below) of the bracket are inserted into the holes (dotted squares below) at the bottom of the ADF.





									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
80	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.		Maintenan	ice iviar	ıuaı	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 BOY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	Λ0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	2/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK 1	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	13	41431

5-12 Flatbed

5-12-1 FB Top Cover **fi-6240/fi-6230**

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 3-30 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove Flatbed.

Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

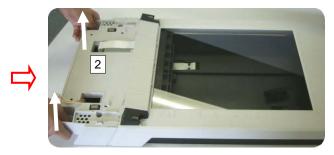
1. Remove Document Cover.

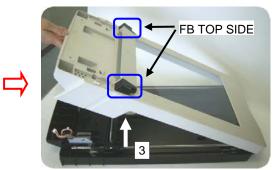
(1) Referring to Section 5-12-9 "Document Cover," remove the Document Cover.

2. Remove FB Top Cover.

- (2) Remove two screws C (circles below) on the FB Top Cover. 1
 - Lifting up the ADF side of the FB Top Cover, remove the FB Top Cover. 2
 - From the back of the FB Top Cover, push two tabs (squares below) of the FB TOP SIDE with a flat-blade screwdriver to remove. $\boxed{3}$







<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miy	roshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	.Okada	Cl	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	13	31231

5-12-2 FB Motor Unit fi-6240/fi-6230

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-31 for the part number of the replacement part.

- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove Flatbed.

Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Document Cover.

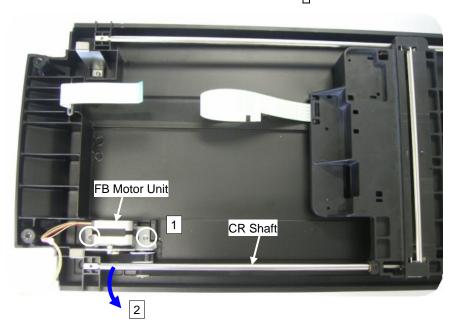
(1) Referring to Section 5-12-9 "Document Cover," remove the Document Cover.

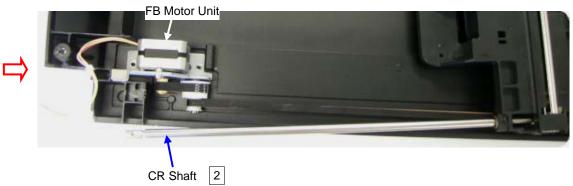
2. Remove FB Top Cover.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-12-1 "FB Top Cover," remove the FB Top Cover.

3. Remove FB Motor Unit.

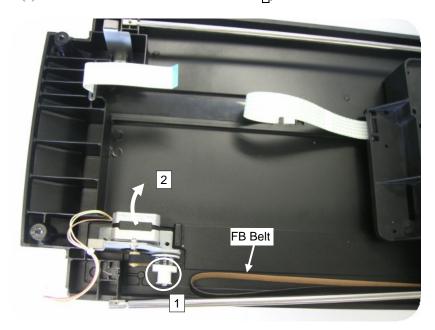
- (3) Remove two screws C(circles below) of the FB Motor Unit. 1.
 - Move the CR Shaft near the FB Motor Unit outward. 2



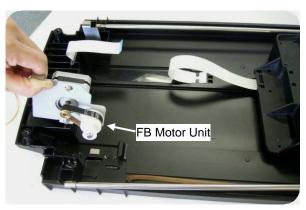


08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda <i>i</i>	A.Miyos	hi I.Fuji	oka Re	fer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	i I.Fuji	oka Re	fer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	i I.Fuji	oka Re	fer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHECK	(APP	R. DE	SCI	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	4/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Ok	kada	CHECK	K.Okad	а		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	13	4/23/

(4) Unfasten the FB Belt from the FB Motor Unit [1], and then remove the FB Motor Unit. [2]







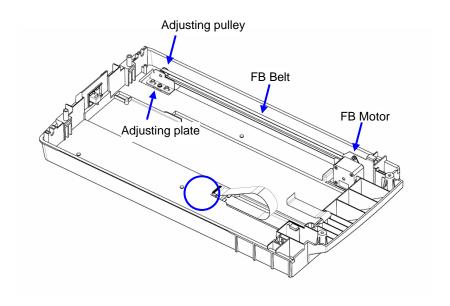
									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240)/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELI	LIMITED	Page	12	5/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		гау е	13	31431

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

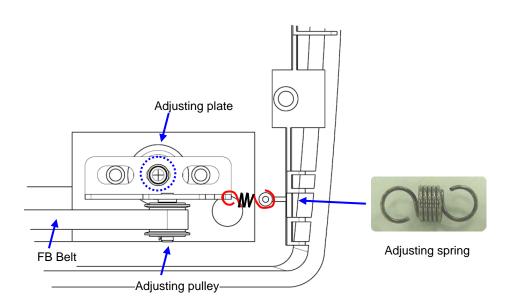
Note: Adjust the FB belt tension.

(1) Hook the FB Belt onto the FB Motor and the adjusting pulley, and then temporarily joint the adjusting plate.

Do NOT install the OPT Box Unit.

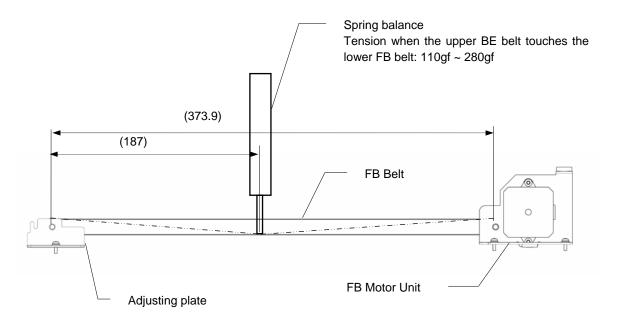


- (2) Place the belt tension adjusting spring that is attached to the Maintenance Part as shown below.
 - Tighten the screw C (circle below).
 - Remove the belt tension adjusting spring.



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda	A.Miyo	shi I.f	Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai I.F	.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai I.F	.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N	CHEC	K A	PPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	6/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.O)kada	CHEC	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	13	0/23/

(3) Check the belt tension.



- Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

 Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.

 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.

 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda	A.Miyo	shi	I.Fujic	oka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka R	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHEC	K	APPF	R. □	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	7/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Oł	kada	CH	IECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	13	11231

5-12-3 FB Motor **fi-6240/fi-6230**

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 3-32 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove Flatbed.

Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Document Cover.

(1) Referring to Section 5-12-9 "Document Cover," remove the Document Cover.

2. Remove FB Top Cover.

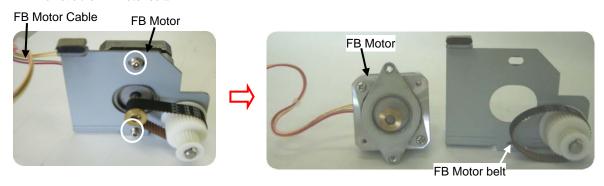
(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-12-1 "FB Top Cover," remove the FB Top Cover.

3. Remove FB Motor Unit.

(3) Referring to steps (3) ~ (4) of Section 5-12-2 "FB Motor Unit," remove the FB Motor Unit.

4. Remove FB Motor.

- (4) Remove two screws C (circles below) of the FB Motor.
 - Remove the FB Motor belt.

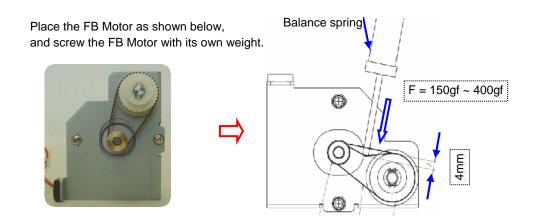


<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Adjust the FB motor belt tension.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An	zai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA035	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An	zai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DEL	LIMITED	Page	12	8/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן ארט		rage	13	01231



								TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on p	page 2.		Maintenan	ce iviar	nuai	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on p	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on p	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	Nυ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIP	TION		DELL	LIMITED	Page	12	9/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK K.	.Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		raye	13	91231

5-12-4 OPT Box Unit fi-6240/fi-6230

NOTICE

- The OPT Unit, Joint PCA, core, and Inverter cable are not included.
- The Inverter and Lamp are included.
- Re-install the OPT Unit, Joint PCA, core and Inverter cable.
- Refer to Section 3-33 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

Remove Flatbed.

Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Document Cover.

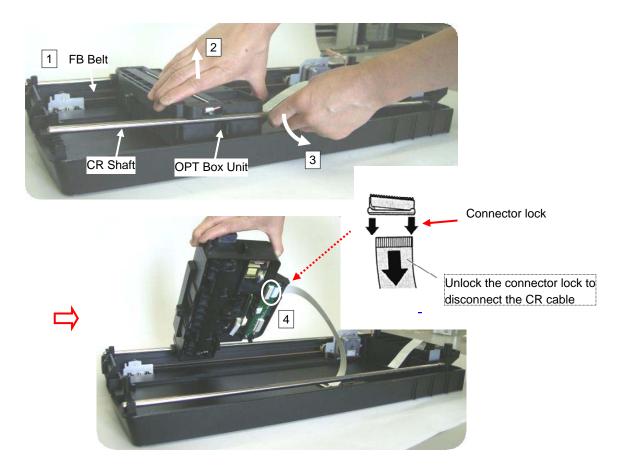
(1) Referring to Section 5-12-9 "Document Cover," remove the Document Cover.

2. Remove FB Top Cover.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-12-1 "FB Top Cover," remove the FB Top Cover.

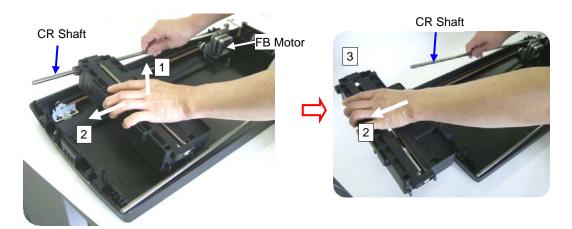
3. Remove OPT Box Unit.

- (3) Remove the FB Belt from the OPT Box Unit. 1
 - Lifting up the CR cable side of the OPT Box Unit 2, remove the CR shaft outward 3.
 - Disconnect the CR cable at the bottom of the OPT Box Unit. 4



									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to F	Revision Re	ecord on	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to F	Revision Re	ecord on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	Y/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to F	Revision Re	ecord on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	~ 0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRI	IPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1.4	0/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK K.	.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU	LIIVII I ED	гау е	14	01231

(4) Lifting up the FB Motor side of the OPT Box Unit 1, move the OPT Box Unit outward 2, and then remove the CR shaft 3.



4. Remove OPT Unit.

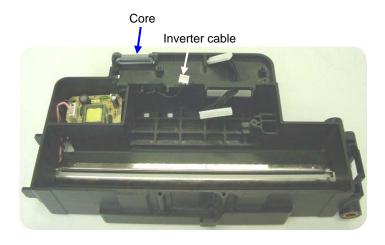
(5) Referring to step (4) of Section 5-12-5 "OPT Unit," remove the OPT Unit.

5. Remove Joint PCA.

(6) Referring to Step (4) of Section 5-12-10 "Joint PCA," remove the Joint PCA.

6. Remove the core and Inverter cable.

(7) Remove the core and Inverter cable.

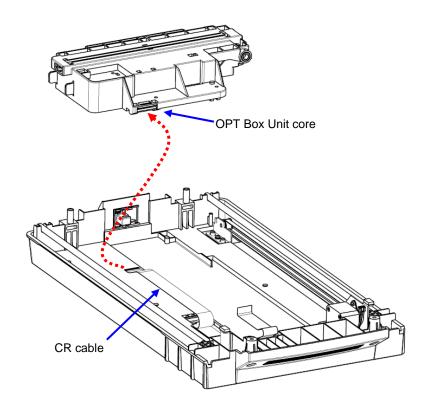


08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1.4	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	(.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	TFU		rage	14	1/23/

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Re-install the OPT Unit, Joint PCA, core and Inverter cable.

Note: Thread the CR cable through the OPT Box Unit core.



Note: Install the FB Belt to the OPT Box Unit.

Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.
 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1.4	2/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	14	21231

5-12-5 OPT Unit fi-6240/fi-6230

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 3-6 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove Flatbed.

Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Document Cover.

(1) Referring to Section 5-12-9 "Document Cover," remove the Document Cover.

2. Remove FB Top Cover.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-12-1 "FB Top Cover," remove the FB Top Cover.

3. Remove OPT Box Unit.

(3) Referring to steps (3) ~ (4) of Section 5-12-4 "OPT Box Unit," remove the OPT Box Unit.

4. Remove Joint PCA.

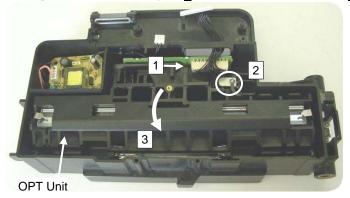
(4) Referring to step (4) of Section 5-12-10 "Joint PCA," remove the Joint PCA.

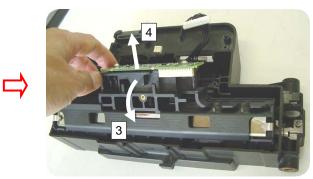
5. Remove OPT Unit.

(5) - Disconnect the CCD cable. 1

Note: Pinching the root of connector of the CCD board to support, pull out the CCD cable straight.

- Remove the screw A (circle below) on the OPT Hold plate, and then remove the OPT Hold plate. 2
- Lift up the OPT Unit at 45 degrees 3, and then remove the OPT Unit 4.



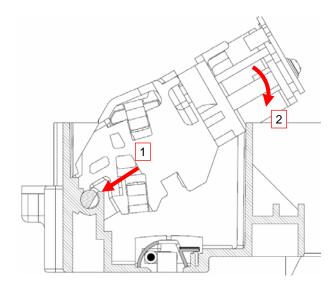


08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DAY	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1.4	3/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK I	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	14	31231

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Blow out the dust inside of the Glass and the OPT Unit with air before installation.

Install the OPT unit in the order of $1 \rightarrow 2$



Note: Face the convex side down when installing the OPT Hold Plate.

Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.
 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1.4	4/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	14	4/23/

5-12-6 Inverter fi-6240/fi-6230

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-3 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

Remove Flatbed.

Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Document Cover.

(1) Referring to Section 5-12-9 "Document Cover," remove the Document Cover.

2. Remove FB Top Cover.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-12-1 "FB Top Cover," remove the FB Top Cover.

3. Remove OPT Box Unit.

(3) Referring to steps (3) ~ (4) of Section 5-12-4 "OPT Box Unit," remove the OPT Box Unit.

Remove Inverter.

- (4) Disconnect two Inverter cables (circles below).
 - Unlatch two claws at both sides of the Inverter to remove the Inverter.

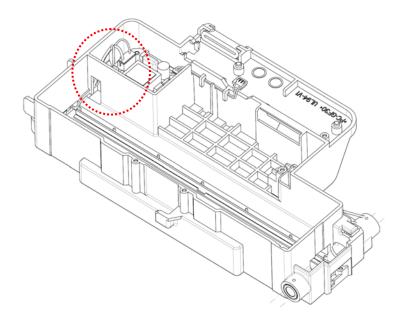




08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	1.4	5/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada CH	HECK K.	Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		Page	14	31231

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Wire the Lamp cable as shown below.



Note: Make sure that the claws at both sides of the Inverter are securely latched.

- Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

 Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.

 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.

 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisior	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	1.4	6/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	(.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	TFU		Page	14	0/23/

5-12-7 Lamp fi-6240/fi-6230

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-4 for the part number of the replacement part.

- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove Flatbed.

Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Document Cover.

(1) Referring to Section 5-12-9 "Document Cover," remove the Document Cover.

2. Remove FB Top Cover.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-12-1 "FB Top Cover," remove the FB Top Cover.

3. Remove OPT Box Unit.

(3) Referring to steps (3) ~ (4) of Section 5-12-4 "OPT Box Unit," remove the OPT Box Unit.

4. Remove Inverter.

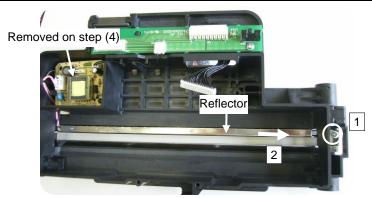
(4) Referring to step (4) of Section 5-12-6, remove the Inverter.

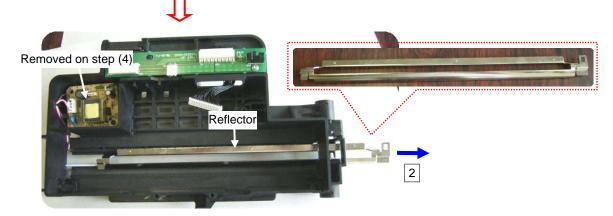
5. Remove Lamp.

(5) - Remove the screw A (circle below) of the reflector.

- Move the reflector to the right 2, and draw it out of the OPT Box Unit 3

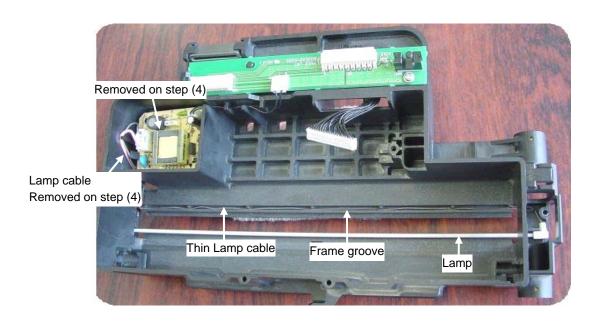
Note: Do NOT break the Lamp with the reflector.





08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	ni I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1.4	7/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada C	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	14	11231

- (6) Remove the thin cable from the groove of the frame.
 - Remove the Lamp.

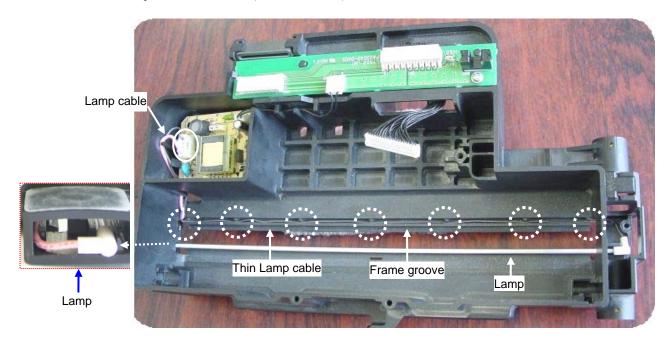


08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1.4	8/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	14	01231

<Installation>

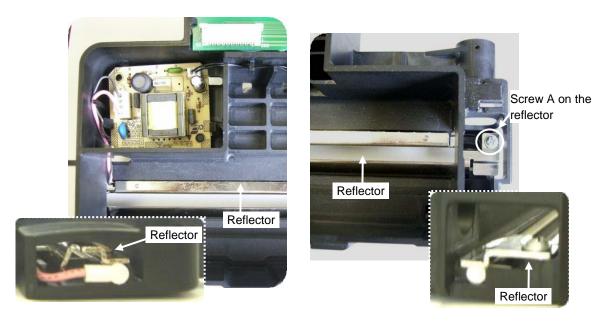
Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

- (1) Install the Lamp to the frame, and then route the thin Lamp cable on the groove of the frame.
 - Connect the Lamp cable to the Inverter (solid circle below).



(2) Install the reflector to the frame.

Note: Make sure that the protrusions of the reflector are inserted into the holes of the frame.



Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

- Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification. Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.
- Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada A	A.Miyosh	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	GN (CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	1.4	9/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	14	91431

5-12-8 CR Cable fi-6240/fi-6230

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-37 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

Remove Flatbed.

Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Document Cover.

(1) Referring to Section 5-12-9 "Document Cover," remove the Document Cover.

2. Remove FB Top Cover.

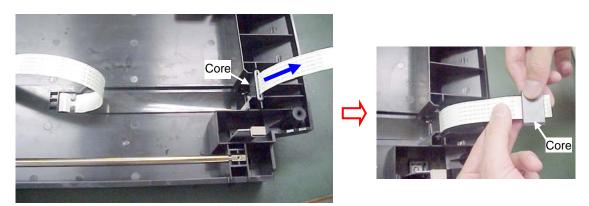
(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-12-1 "FB Top Cover," remove the FB Top Cover.

3. Remove OPT Box Unit.

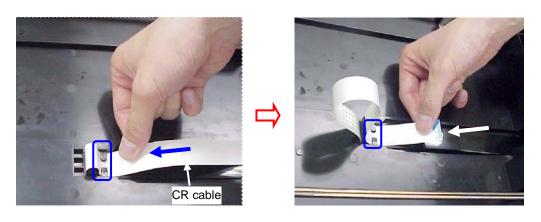
(3) Referring to steps (3) ~ (4) of Section 5-12-4 "OPT Box Unit," remove the OPT Box Unit.

4. Remove CR Cable.

(4) Lift up the core to remove.

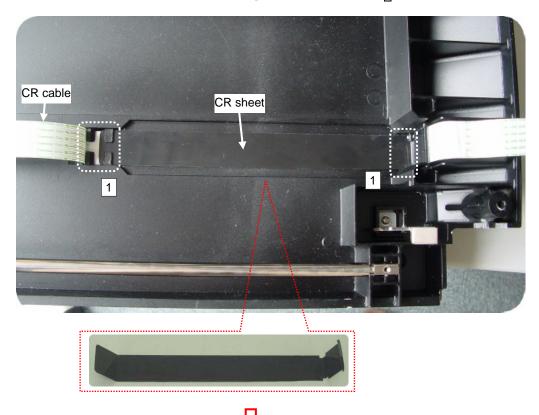


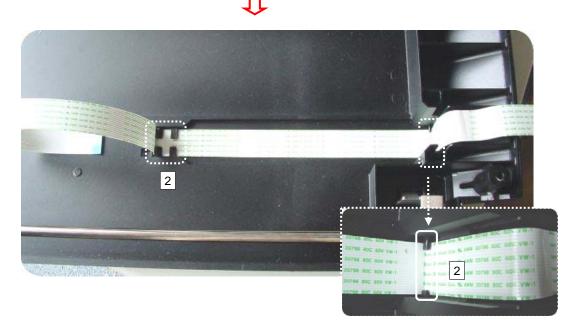
(5) Move the CR Cable to the left, and then unhook it from the claws (square below) of the frame.



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda	A.Miyo	shi I.F	ujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai I.F	ujioka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai I.F	ujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N	CHEC	K AF	PPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	15	0/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.O)kada	CHEC	K K	.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	13	0/23/

(4) - Unhook the CR Sheet from two claws (squares below) of the frame. 1 - Unhook the CR Cable from two claws (squares below) of the frame.

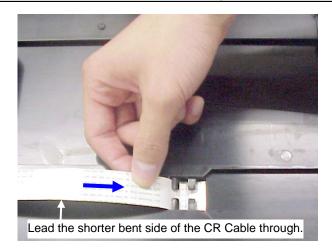




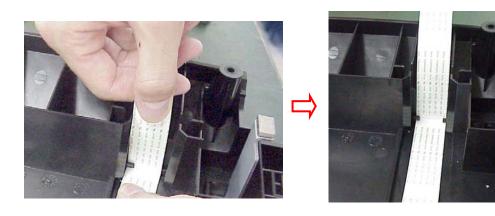
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	15	1/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	13	1/23/

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: With white face of the CR Cable down, lead the shorter bent side under the hook of the frame.



Note: Lead the shorter bent side under the hook of the frame.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	15	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	13	21231

5-12-9 Document Cover fi-6240/fi-6230

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-38 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removal>

1. Remove Document Cover.

(1) Open the Document Cover, and then lift it up.

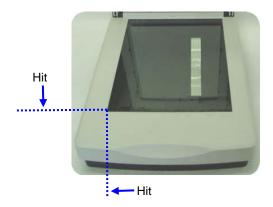


<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Paste the cushion attached to the Maintenance part to the Document Cover.

(1) With the white side of the cushion facing down, place the cushion on the glass surface, aligning to the lower left reference point.



- (2) Peel off the double-sided tape of the cushion.
- (3) Close the document cover slowly to paste the document cover and cushion.
- (4) Remove the Document cover from the Flatbed, push the cushion by hand firmly.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda .	A.Miyos	shi I	I.Fujio	ka Ref	er t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai I	I.Fujio	ka Ref	er t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai I	I.Fujio	ka Ref	er t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHEC	K /	APPR	. DE	SC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	15	3/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Ok	kada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada	3		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	13	31231

5-12-10 Joint PCA fi-6240/fi-6230

NOTICE

Refer to Section 3-39 for the part number of the replacement part.

- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

Remove Flatbed.

Referring to Section 5-7 "Removing Flatbed," remove the Flatbed.

1. Remove Document Cover.

(1) Referring to Section 5-12-9 "Document Cover," remove the Document Cover.

2. Remove FB Top Cover.

(2) Referring to step (2) of Section 5-12-1 "FB Top Cover," remove the FB Top Cover.

3. Remove OPT Box Unit.

(3) Referring to steps (3) ~ (4) of Section 5-12-4 "OPT Box Unit," remove the OPT Box Unit.

4. Remove Joint PCA.

- (4) Remove the screw A (square below) on the Joint PCA, and then remove the Joint PCA.
 - Disconnect two cables (circles below) of the Joint PCA.





08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	15	4/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	13	4/23/

<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

- Note: Perform the following adjustments after replacing the parts.

 Referring to Section 6-1-3 "Maintenance Mode #2," adjust the magnification.

 Referring to Section 6-1-4 "Maintenance Mode #3," adjust the offset.

 Referring to Section 6-1-5 "Maintenance Mode #4," adjust the white level.

									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
80	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ice Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	15	5/257
Design	1. July 27	2007 K.C)kada CF	IFCK K	Okada		APPR	T Anzai	PFU		rage	13	31231

Chapter 6 Adjustment/Settings

6-1 Maintenance mode

The scanner supports built-in Maintenance mode that allows service engineers to check scanner's performance and settings. This section gives the description of Maintenance mode.

Note on Maintenance Mode



If you want to perform <u>"White level adjustment"</u> for Flatbed with a "Black document holding pad" installed onto the scanner, replace it with the standard "White document holding pad" before starting the adjustment.

If you cannot install the standard "White document holding pad", pile up three white reference sheets and close the "Black document holding pad", and then start adjustment.

* If White level adjustment is performed with a "Black document holding pad" installed, the correct offset may not be acquired which results in abnormal image (the image is too bright).

6-1-1 Activating the Maintenance mode

(1) How to activate the Maintenance mode

Open the ADF and press the power button once while holding down the Scan/Stop button. Keep holding the Scan/Stop button down until Screen T04 is displayed. This will put the scanner into Maintenance mode. While in Maintenance mode, the scanner interface is off-line.

The following display appears during power up processing in Maintenance mode.

Screen T01

F	Function No. Display	Power LED	Scanner status
	8	ON	Initial processing in Maintenance mode

When Maintenance mode is activated normally after the initial processing, the following display appears.

Screen T04

Function No. Display	Power LED	Scanner status
	ON	Maintenance mode #1 selected

(2) Test/adjustment items of the Maintenance mode

The following lists test/adjustment items $\#1 \sim \#7$ that are supported by the scanner.

Mode 1: Paper transportation / Sensor / Background changeover test

Mode 2: Main scanning/Sub-scanning magnification adjustment

Mode 3: Offset adjustment

Mode 4: White level adjustment

Mode 5: Consumables counter display and reset

Mode 6: Miscellaneous information display

Mode 7: EEPROM data restore

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6				VIC	CUST.		
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION		_	DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	15	6/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	13	0/23/

(3) Changing Maintenance mode

To change Maintenance modes (#1 \sim #8), press the Function button on the activation screen for Maintenance mode. The display changes as follows. Mode #1 is the default mode.

Maintenance		Display			Related
mode No.	Function No.	Power	Status	Maintenance mode	section
	Display	LED	transition		
#1		ON		Paper transportation / Sensor / Background changeover test	6-1-2
#2		ON		Main-scanning/ Sub-scanning magnification adjustment	6-1-3
#3		ON		Offset adjustment	6-1-4
#4		ON	-	White level adjustment	6-1-5
#5	0	ON		Consumables counter display and reset	6-1-6
#6	8	ON		Miscellaneous information display	6-1-7
#7	8	ON		EEPROM data restore	6-1-8
#8	8	ON		(Reserved) * Pressing the Function button returns to #1.	

(4) Starting the Maintenance mode

Select one Maintenance mode and press Scan. The scanner activates the selected Maintenance mode.

									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	Λ0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	15	7/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		гау е	13	11431

6-1-2 Maintenance mode #1: Paper feeding / Sensor / Background changeover test

This mode tests the ADF/FB paper feeding operation at the selected speed, checks each status (ON/OFF) of the ADF sensors, and tests background changeover.

[How to start]

(1) From screen T04, press the Function (△ or ▽) button to select (Maintenance mode #1) and press the Scan/Stop button. The selection screen for scanning speed/sensor/Background change over test appears. A number is shown on the Function No. Display indicating the selected scanning speed or test mode as follows.

Function No. Display	Scanning speed/test mode	Remarks
0	Monochrome 600 dpi	Default
1	Monochrome 300 dpi	
2	Monochrome 240 dpi	
3	Monochrome 200 dpi	
4	Monochrome 100 dpi	
5	Monochrome 150 dpi	
6	Monochrome 400 dpi	
7	Sensor test	
8	Background changeover test	

<Paper feeding test>

(2) Select a scanning speed from 0 to 6 (this varies depending on the scanning resolution) from 0 ~ 6 by pressing the Function button.

When the Imprinter option is NOT connected:

(3) <u>To test the continuous feeding operation</u>, press the <u>Scan/Stop</u> button. The ADF operation is started if any paper on the ADF paper chute (Chute unit) (Hopper empty sensor = Sensor EMP ON).

To test the one-sheet feeding operation, while pressing the Send to button, press the Scan/Stop button, which switches to the one-sheet feeding operation mode. Go to step (5).

When the Imprinter option is connected:

(3) To test the continuous feeding operation, press the Scan/Stop button. The function number display requires selecting whether imprinting is necessary or not.

To test the one-sheet feeding operation, while pressing the Send to button, press the Scan/Stop button, which switches to the one-sheet feeding operation mode. The function number display requires to select whether imprinting is necessary or not. When the display changed, press the Send to button.

Function number display	Mode	Remarks
_	NO imprinting	Default (Screen T11)
P	Imprinting	Screen T12

• Test print specification

Printing position: The test pattern below are printed out starting at 5mm from the leading edge of the paper.

Test pattern 1: ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[¥]^_` (32 characters, horizontal)

Test pattern 2: abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~ (31 characters, horizontal)

Test pattern 3: !"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ (32 characters, horizontal)

Test pattern 4: ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[¥]^_` (32 characters, vertical)

Test pattern 5: abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~ (31 characters, vertical)

Test pattern 6: !"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@ (32 characters, vertical)

The test pattern above is postfixed with an 8-digit-number. A total of 40 characters are printed in pattern 1, 3,

4 or 6. A total of 39 characters are printed in pattern 2 or 5.

Printing is repeated in the order of pattern $1 \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow 3 \rightarrow 4 \rightarrow 5 \rightarrow 6 \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow 3 \dots$

The numbering data portion is incremented by one from "00000000."

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6				VIC	CUST.		
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION		_	DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	15	8/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	13	01231

(4) Select whether imprinting is necessary or not by pressing the Function button.

Screen T11

Function No. display	Scanner status
	"-" lights without blinking.
	NO imprinting (default)

Screen T12

Function No. display	Scanner status
0	"P" lights without blinking.
	Imprinting

Available buttons at Screen T11 and T12>
Function button: Switches between Screens

T11 and T12 every press.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and

returns to Screen T04.

(5) Press the Scan/Stop button. The ADF operation is started if there is any paper on the ADF paper chute (Chuter unit) (Sensor EMP: ON). In case of fi-6240/fi-6230, FB operation is started if there is no paper on the ADF paper chute (Chuter unit).

<Sensor test>

(2) By pressing the Scan/Stop button while "7" is shown on the display, the scanner enters Sensor test mode. The following table shows how the sensor status is displayed while the sensor test is in progress. Refer to Section 6-2 "Saving EEPROM data" for the sensor positions of the ADF.

Function No. Display	Description *2	Display				
Check	indicates Imprinter document detection sensor status	Illuminates when the sensor is ON (Paper is detected)				
2 4 8 5 3 7	2: indicates Empty sensor (Sensor EMP) status	Illuminates when the sensor is ON (Paper is detected)				
	3: indicates PICK sensor status	Illuminates when the sensor is ON (Paper is detected)				
6	4: indicates TOP sensor status	Illuminates when the sensor is ON (Paper is detected)				
	5: indicates Cover Open Sensor (Switch) status	Illuminates when the sensor is OFF (Cover is open) *1				
	6: indicates Imprinter printing section status	Illuminates when the sensor is OFF (Printing section is				
	(open/close)	open)				
	7: indicates Multi feed sensor (US Sensor)	Illuminates when the sensor is ON (Multifeed is detected)				
	status					
	8: Indicates Paper Protection function status	Illuminates when the sensor is ON (Encoder rotation is				
		detected) (Blinks when Encoder is rotating.)				

- *1: This sensor test should be conducted by opening/closing the ADF cover. If the Cover open sensor is pressed by anything while the ADF cover is open, the Multi feed sensor (US Sensor) turns ON, causing position "7" to light as well.
- *2: The confirmation of US sensor is available only when the document is fed by pressing the Function button as described below. You cannot confirm US sensor by just inserting document (no feeding) between US sensors.
- (3) During the sensor test, you can check the sensor status (ON/OFF) when the document passes through the ADF by the following procedure:
 - 1. Press the Function button. The ADF Motor starts to rotate.
 - 2. Set the document into the ADF paper chute (Chute unit).

<Background changeover test>

(2) While "8" is shown on the display, close the cover if it is opened. Pressing the $\frac{Scan}{Stop}$ button starts Background changeover test (white \Leftrightarrow black). The operation stops automatically after changeover 20 times between black and white.

[How to end]

Press the Send to button. The test stops and the Maintenance mode selection Screen T04 appears. The ADF continuous feeding operation is also terminated when no more paper on the ADF paper chute (Chute unit).

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6				VIC	CUST.		
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	15	9/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	13	71231

6-1-3 Maintenance mode #2: Main scanning / Sub-scanning magnification adjustment

In this mode, the magnification correction values for main/sub-scanning are automatically calculated to satisfy the following adjustment value:

Adjustment value

Main scanning: Within ±1.0%

Sub scanning: Within ±1.0% (Without stop and start during scanning)

: Within $\pm 2.0\%$ (With stop and start during scanning)

NOTICE

Before this adjustment, please prepare the Test sheet described in Figure 6-1-3.

If Main-scanning magnification (ADF front or back, or FB) is adjusted, then run Offset adjustment (ADF front or back, or FB) described in Section 6-1-4.

[How to start]

(1) From screen T04, Press the Function (\triangle or ∇) button to select Maintenance mode #2) and press the Scan/Stop button. A number is shown on the Function No. Display indicating the magnification to be adjusted as follows:

Function No. Display	Magnification to be adjusted	Remarks
0	ADF sub- scanning magnification adjustment	Default
1	ADF main scanning magnification adjustment (front)	
2	ADF main scanning magnification adjustment (back)	
3	FB sub-scanning magnification adjustment	FB models (fi-6240/fi-6230) only
4	FB main scanning magnification adjustment	FB models (fi-6240/fi-6230) only

- (2) Select the magnification you want to change by pressing Function button.
- (3) For the ADF adjustment, set the Test sheet on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit), and adjust the side guide to the width of the test sheet.

For the FB adjustment, set the Test sheet on the Document bed to be aligned with the reference point (left of the Document bed, front edge), and remove the Document Cover. Avoid working near light source such as fluorescent lamp.

(4) Press Scan/Stop button to start the adjustment.

[How to end]

Press Send to button during operation. The operation stops and the Maintenance mode selection screen (T04) appears.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. P1PA03540-B0XX/6				VIC	CUST.		
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. No			No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	16	0/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	(.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	01231

[Display after adjustment]

After the magnification adjustment, the following display appears depending on its terminated status.

(1) When the magnification adjustment is terminated normally

Screen T21

Function No Display	Scanner status
	Displays "o" (lower half) without blinking.

<Available buttons at screen T21>

Function button: Displays screen T22 to write the correction value into EEPROM.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T22

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"o" (lower half) blinks.

<Available buttons at screen T22>

Scan/Stop + Function button: Starts writing the magnification correction value into EEPROM. During writing operation, screen T23 displayed, and when it finishes, screen T24 appears.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T23

Bereen 125	
Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"L" lights without blinking.

Note: While screen T23 is displayed, no button can function.

Screen T24

Function No. Display	Scanner status
0	"o" (upper half) lights without blinking.

<Available buttons at screen T24>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION		_	DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	16	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		Page	10	1/23/

(2) When the magnification adjustment is terminated abnormally

Screen T25

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "c" without blinking.

Note: The major reason of abnormal termination is incorrect setting of the test sheet. Set the test sheet correctly and try the magnification adjustment again.

<Available buttons at screen T25>

Function button: Displays error information (screen T26)

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T26

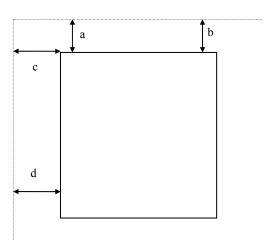
Function		Adjus	stment n	node	(*1)	Countermeasure when abnormal		
No. Display	Description	0	1,2	3	4	termination frequently occurs		
	1: cannot detect the leading edge of the document	$\sqrt{}$		√				
2 4	2: cannot detect the left edge of the document		$\sqrt{}$		√			
2 4 5 3 7	4: cannot detect the right edge of the document		√		√	Conduct necessary operation by referring to step (2) and later in Section 4-3-7 or		
6	5: Excessive skew A		V	V		Section 4-3-10.		
	6: cannot detect the trailing edge of the document	√		√				
	7: Excessive skew B		V		V			

- (*1) 0 : ADF sub-scanning magnification adjustment
 - 1,2: ADF front/back main scanning magnification adjustment
 - 3: FB sub-scanning magnification adjustment
 - 4: FB main scanning magnification adjustment

Skew A and B are calculated as follows:

Skew
$$A = a - b$$

Skew
$$B = c - d$$



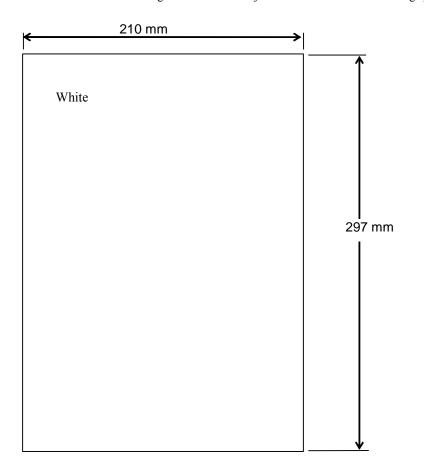
<Available button at screen T26>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujio	ka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6				VIC	CUST.		
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujio	ka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. No.				ΝÜ			
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK /	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	16	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	10	21231

[Test sheet]

Use the test sheet for the magnification/offset adjustment that meets the following specification.



Use Normal A4 office paper. (White level adjustment sheet can also be used.)

Figure 6-1-3 Test sheet for the magnification/offset adjustment

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6				VIC	CUST.		
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. No.				ΝÜ			
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	16	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	10	131231

6-1-4 Maintenance mode #3: Offset adjustment

In this mode, the offset correction values for main/sub scanning are automatically calculated to satisfy the following offset values:

Offset value

Main scanning: The largest offset of A6 or larger size of document shall be: \pm 24 dot Sub-scanning: The largest offset of A6 or larger size of document shall be: \pm 33 dot

NOTICE

Before this adjustment, please prepare the Test sheet described in Figure 6-1-3.

Also, before adjusting offset (ADF front or back, or FB), run Main-scanning magnification adjustment (ADF front or back, or FB) by referring to Section 6-1-3.

[How	to	start
------	----	-------

(1) From screen T04, Press the Function (△ or ▽) button to select Maintenance mode #3) and press the Scan/Stop button.

A number is shown on the Function No. Display indicating the location of the offset to be adjusted.

Function No. Display	Offset to be adjusted	Remarks
0	ADF front	Default
1	ADF back	
2	FB	FB models (fi-6240/fi-6230) only

- (2) Change the selection by pressing Function button.
- (3) For the ADF adjustment, set the test sheet (see Figure 6-1-3) on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit), and adjust the side guide to the width of the test sheet.

For the FB adjustment, set the test sheet (see Figure 6-1-3) on the Document bed to be aligned with the reference point (left of the Document bed, front edge), and remove the Document Cover. Avoid working near light source such as fluorescent lamp.

(4) Press Scan/Stop button to start the adjustment operation.

[How to end]

Press Send to button during operation. The operation stops and the Maintenance mode selection screen (T04) appears.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	16	4/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K	.Okada	СН	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	41231

[Display after adjustment]

After the offset adjustment, the following display appears depending on its terminated status.

(1) When the offset adjustment is terminated normally

Screen T31

Function No. Display	Scanner status
f	Displays "o" without blinking.
Ö	The adjustment has terminated normally.

<Available buttons at screen T31>

Function button: Displays screen T32 to write the correction value into EEPROM.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and return to screen T04.

Screen T32

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"o" (lower half) blinks.
	Confirming whether the correction value shall be written in EEPROM or not.

<Available buttons at screen T32>

Scan/Stop + Function button: Start writing the offset correction value into EEPROM. During writing operation, screen T33 displayed, and when it finishes, screen T34 appears.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T33

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"L" lights without blinking.
	Correction value is being written in EEPROM.

Note: While screen T33 is displayed, no button can function.

Screen T34

Sereen 15.	
Function No. Display	Scanner status
0	"o" (upper half) lights without blinking. The value has been written normally.

<Available buttons at screen T34>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. DES	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	16	5/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHI	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	31231

(2) When the offset adjustment is terminated abnormally

Screen T35

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "c" without blinking.
	The adjustment has terminated abnormally.

Note: The major reason of abnormal termination is incorrect setting of the test sheet. Set the test sheet correctly and try the magnification adjustment again.

<Available buttons at screen T35>

Function button: Displays error information (screen T36)

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T36

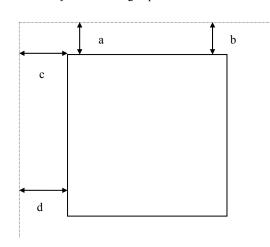
Function	D	Adjustr	nent mo	ode (*1)	Countermeasure when abnormal		
No. Display	Description	0	1	2	termination frequently occurs		
	1: cannot detect the leading edge of the document (black detection failed)	\checkmark	√	√	Conduct necessary operation by referring to step (2) and later in		
1	2: cannot detect the left edge of the document (black detection failed)	\checkmark	\checkmark	\checkmark	Section 4-3-6 or Section 4-3-9.		
2 4 5 3 7	3: cannot detect the leading edge of the document (white detection failed)	\checkmark	√	$\sqrt{}$			
_	4: Excessive skew A		V	V			
6	5: cannot detect the left edge of the document (white detection failed)	√	√	√			
	7: Excessive skew B	√	V	√			

(*1) 0: ADF front 1: ADF back 2: FB

Skew A and B are calculated by the following expression.

Skew A = a - b

Skew B = c - d



<Available buttons at screen T36>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

[Test sheet]

Use the same sheet as used for the magnification adjustment. See Figure 6-1-3.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION		_	DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	16	6/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	10	0/23/

6-1-5 Maintenance mode #4: White level adjustment

In this mode, the white level correction values for main/sub scanning are automatically adjusted.



Before this adjustment, please prepare the White level adjustment sheet described in Section 5-4.

Note on White level adjustment



If you want to perform <u>"White level adjustment"</u> for Flatbed with a "Black document holding pad" installed onto the scanner, replace it with the standard "White document holding pad" before starting the adjustment.

If you cannot install the standard "White document holding pad", pile up three white reference sheets and close the "Black document holding pad", and then start adjustment.

* If White level adjustment is performed with a "Black document holding pad" installed, the correct offset may not be acquired which results in abnormal image (the image is too bright).

[How to start]

(1) From screen T04, press the Function (\triangle or ∇) button to select Maintenance mode #4) and press the Scan/Stop button. A number is shown on the Function No. Display indicating the location of the white level to be adjusted.

Function No. Display	White level to be adjusted	Remarks
0	ADF front	Default
1	ADF back	
2	FB	FB models (fi-6240/fi-6230) only

- (2) Change the selection by pressing Function button.
- (3) For the ADF adjustment, set the adjustment test sheet on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) and adjust the side guide to the width of the test sheet. Either side of the adjustment test sheet can be used.

For the FB adjustment, set the adjustment test sheet on the Document bed to be aligned with the reference point (left of the Document bed, front edge), and close the Document Cover.

(4) Press Scan/Stop button to start the adjustment operation.

Note: The adjustment starts approx. 10 seconds after pressing Scan/Stop button to make the light intensity becomes stable.

[How to end]

Press Send to button during operation. The operation stops and the Maintenance mode selection screen (T04) appears.

Note: After reading the white level adjustment sheet, it takes approx. 10 seconds for the scanner to calculate the level adjustment and close adjustment.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	on Record or	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	DESCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	16	7/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	(.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	7 250		rage	10	11231

[Display after adjustment]

After the white level adjustment, the following display appears depending on its terminated status.

(1) When the white level adjustment is terminated normally

Screen T41

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "o" without blinking. The adjustment has terminated normally.

<Available buttons at screen T41>

Function button: Displays screen T42 to write the white level correction value into EEPROM.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T42

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"o" (lower half) blinks.
	Confirming whether the correction value shall be written in EEPROM or not.

<Available buttons at screen T42>

Scan/Stop + Function button: Start writing the white level correction value into EEPROM. During writing operation, screen

T43 displayed, and when it finishes, screen T44 appears

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T43

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"L" lights without blinking. Correction value is being written in EEPROM.

Note: While screen T43 is displayed, no button can function.

Screen T44

Function No. Display	Scanner status
0	"o" (upper half) lights without blinking. The value has written normally.

<Available buttons at screen T44>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada A	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada .	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada .	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN (CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	16	8/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	10	00/23/

(2) When the white level adjustment is terminated abnormally

Screen T45

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "c".
	The adjustment has terminated abnormally.

Note: The major reason of abnormal termination is incorrect setting of the test sheet. Set the test sheet correctly and try the magnification adjustment again.

<Available buttons at screen T45>

Function button: Displays error information (screen T46)

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T46

Function No.	Description	Countermeasure when abnormal termination
Display		frequently occurs
1	1: media error	It seems Lamp or Optical Unit is faulty. Replace
	The tested sheet may not be the specified one. Check	defective parts.
2 4 5 3 7	the test sheet.	
5 3 7	2: No paper	
7,		
б		

<Available buttons at screen T46>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and return to screen T04.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	16	9/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	10	91431

6-1-6 Maintenance mode #5: Consumable counter display and reset

In this mode, the following consumable counter is displayed and reset:

- ADF Pick roller counter (Abrasion counter for Pick roller)
- ADF Brake roller counter (Abrasion counter for Brake roller)
- Remaining amount of ink dot
- Imprinter consumables (Abrasion counter for Print head)

[How to operate]

(1) From screen T04, press the Function (\triangle or ∇) button to select Maintenance mode #5) and press the Scan/Stop button. A number is shown on the Function No. Display indicating the counters as follows.

Function No. Display	White level to be adjusted	Remarks						
0	ADF Pick roller counter (Abrasion counter for Pick roller)	Default						
1	ADF Brake roller counter (Abrasion counter for Brake roller)							
2	(Reserved)							
3	Remaining amount of ink dot	Displayed only when the						
4	Imprinter consumables (Abrasion counter for Print head) Imprinter is installed.							

- (2) Change the selection by pressing Function button.
- (3) The counter is displayed as follows when pressing Scan/Stop button.

Counter	Display
ADF Pick roller counter (Abrasion counter for Pick roller)	The counter displays 8 digits in total, 1 number at a time, from left digit to right digit. (If the counter has not reached 8 digits yet, 0 is added to blank digits.) The symbol "-" is displayed before the first number, indicating the counter display starts. The counter increments by 10. e.g. When the counter is "16,245", "-00016245" is displayed in the following order: "-" \(\to \cdot'\)" \(\to \cdo'\cdo'\cdot'\)" \(\to \cdo'\cdo'\cdo'\cdo'\cdo'\cdo'\cdo'\cdo'
	"-" indicates a starting mark.
ADF Brake roller counter (Abrasion counter for Brake roller)	See "Pick roller counter" above.
Remaining amount of ink dot	The counter displays 3 digits between 100 to 0 in percentage (%). 100% is the initial status. Displayed remaining amount of ink is just a target as it depends on the condition in which it is used. e.g.: When the remaining amount is 58% "-" > "0" > "5" > "8"
	"-" indicates a starting mark. When the Imprinter is not connected, only "-" is displayed.
Imprinter consumables (Abrasion counter for Print head)	See "Pick counter" above.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda	A.Miyo	shi	I.Fujic	oka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	oka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHEC	K	APPF	₹.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	17	0/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.O	Okada	CHI	ECK	K.O)kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	1/	0/23/

(4) The following buttons are available during counter display.

Function button: Displays screen T51 to reset the counter.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T51

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"o" (lower half) blinks. Confirming whether the counter shall be reset or not.

<Available buttons at screen T51>

Scan/Stop + Function button: Starts resetting the displayed counter value to 0. During writing operation, screen T52 displayed, and when it finishes, screen T53 appears.

Note: After reset, the counter value below 500 remains without being reset and that value will be the initial value of the internal counter, but this is not an error.

eg.) When "52,168" is reset, 168 remains and the internal counter will start counting from 168, while Function No. Display shows 0.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T52

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"L" lights without blinking.
	The counter is being reset.

Note: While screen T52 is displayed, no button can function.

Screen T53

Function No. Display	Scanner status
0	"o" (upper half) lights without blinking. Counter reset has done.

<Available buttons at screen T53>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyos	hi I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION		_	PFULIMITED Page 171/257			1 /257	
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 171/			1/23/	

6-1-7 Maintenance mode #6: Miscellaneous information display

In this mode, the following information counter is displayed:

- Firmware version number
- Starting date of the scanner *
- The accumulated number of paper that have been scanned by ADF
- The accumulated number of paper that have been scanned by FB (fi-6240/fi-6230 only)
- *: This indicates the date when the scanner is activated by the driver first. This information is only available if the driver supports this function.

[How to start]

(1) Selects Maintenance mode #6 in screen T04 and press Scan/Stop button. A number appears on the Function No. Display indicating the information.

Function No. Display	Display	Remarks
0	Firmware version	Default
1	Starting date of the scanner	
2	The accumulated number of paper scanned by ADF	
3	The accumulated number of paper scanned by FB	FB models (fi-6240/fi-6230) only

- (2) Change the selection by pressing Function button.
- (3) The information is displayed as follows when pressing Scan/Stop button.

Information	Display
Firmware version number	The firmware version number is displayed in 4 digits from left digits to right digits, following the symbol "-".
	Without Imprinter installed (example): eg. When the scanner version is "A00" (*1), "A" is converted to "01" (*2), so the scanner displays "-0100" in the following order: "-" → "0" → "1" → "0" → "0" "A" is converted to "01" (*2)
	With Imprinter installed (example): eg. When the scanner version is "B00" and the Imprinter version is
	"A00" (*1), "P" and the Imprinter version is indicated after the scanner version. But the Imprinter version will not be indicated if the scanner version is J00 or younger. "-" → "0" → "2" → "0" → "0" → "0" → "0" → "1" → "0" → "0"
	Imprinter firmware version
Starting date	Starting date of the scanner is displayed in 6 digits, 2 digits for "Year (Christian calendar)", 2 digits for "Month", and 2 digits for "Date", following the symbol "-". You cannot reset the date.
	eg. When the starting date is January 31st, 2002, "020131" is displayed in the following order: "-" \rightarrow "0" \rightarrow "2" \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow "1" \rightarrow "3" \rightarrow "1"
The accumulated number of paper scanned by ADF	The accumulated number of paper scanned by ADF is displayed in 8 digits from left digits to right digits, following the symbol "-". (If the counter does not reach 8 digits, 0 is added to blank digits.) The counter increments by 10. You cannot reset this counter.
	eg. When the accumulated number is "16,245", "00016240" is displayed in the following order: "-" \rightarrow "0" \rightarrow "0" \rightarrow "0" \rightarrow "1" \rightarrow "6" \rightarrow "2" \rightarrow "4" \rightarrow "0"
The accumulated number of paper scanned by FB	The accumulated number of paper scanned by FB is displayed in 8 digits from left digits to right digit. See above (ADF).

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614F Maintenance Manual			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPE	R. DESC	RIPTION			PFULIMITED Page 172/257			2 /257	
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page 172/2			21231	

*1: The firmware version is normally expressed by an alphabet, such as A, B or C. However, if the firmware is a beta version, two digits are added after alphabet character, such as A01, A02 or A03. So the firmware version like A00, B00 or C00 means this is an official version.

*2: As 8 segment display cannot display alphabet, alphabet is expressed by two digits as follows:

Α	В	С	 J	K	L
01	02	03	 10	11	12

[How to end]

Press Send to button. The display returns to screen T04.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	17	3/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ררט		rage	1/	31431

6-1-8 Maintenance mode #7: EEPROM data restore

When replacing the Panel PCA, the EEPROM data on the Panel PCA shall be moved to the flash memory of the Control PCA. In this mode, the data is restored from the Control PCA to the Panel PCA.

[How to start]

(1) Selects Maintenance mode #7 in screen T04 and press Scan/Stop button. The following display appears.

Screen T71

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"o" (lower half) blinks.
0	Confirming whether the data shall be restored or not.

<Available buttons at screen T71>

Scan/Stop + Function button: Returns the data from the Control PCA to the EEPROM on the Panel PCA. During restoring

operation, screen T72 is displayed.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T72

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"L" lights without blinking. The data is being restored.

Note: While screen T72 is displayed, no button can function.

[Display of the result]

(1) When the data restore terminated normally, the following display appears.

Screen T73

Bereen 175	
Function No. Display	Scanner status
0	Displays "o" (upper half) without blinking.
	The data has restored normally.

<Available buttons at screen T73>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

(2) When no data exists in the Control PCA, the following display appears.

Screen T74

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "c" without blinking.
	No data exists in the Control PCA.

<Available buttons at screen T74>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	17	4/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	17	4/23/

6-2 Saving EEPROM data

The EEPROM data on the Panel PCA can be saved on the flash memory of the Control PCA. This operation is necessary before replacing the Panel PCA. Since this operation is taken when the Panel PCA is malfunctioning, save data by following the procedure below without using the operator panel.

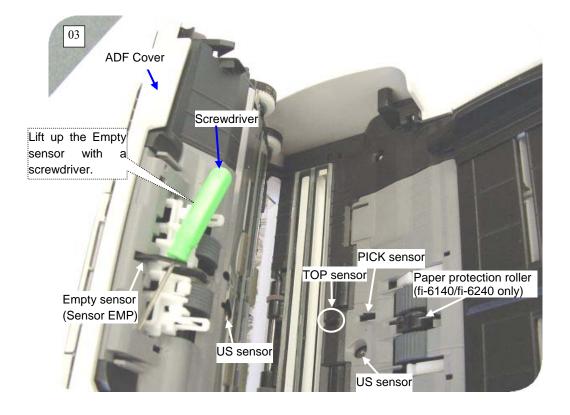
NOTICE

- Do not conduct this procedure unless the Panel PCA is malfunctioning.
- The Panel PCA from which the data was saved to the Control PCA cannot be used again. (See NOTICE on the next page.)
- Make sure to prepare a new Panel PCA before saving the EEPROM data.

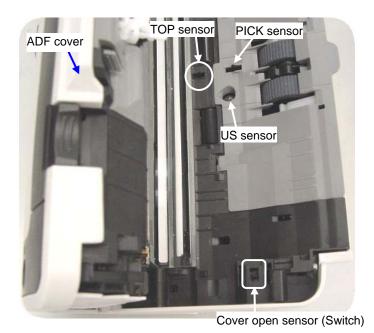
[How to save EEPROM data on the Control PCA]

- 1. Open the ADF cover. While pressing the TOP sensor (circle below) (=ON) and lifting up the Empty sensor (Sensor EMP) (=OFF), power on the scanner.
 - "P" → "H" are displayed if the Function Number display is working correctly.

Note: Lifting up the Empty sensor with a screwdriver makes the operation easier



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan	/fi-614PR			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	zai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6				
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	zai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS				
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	I CHE	CK	APPF	R. [DESCRIPTION			LIMITED	Dogo	17	5/257			
Desig	n July 27,	2007 k	K.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Ok	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU	PFU LIMITED Page			1/3/23/	



- 2. Leave your fingers from TOP sensor and Hopper empty sensor (Sensor EMP) lever.
- 3. Press TOP sensor lever more than one second and let go of it. Repeat it twice.
- 4. Close the ADF cover. (Close the printing section of the Imprinter as well if the Imprinter is installed.) "L" is displayed when the Function No. Display is working normally.
- 5. After more than 5 seconds elapse, open the ADF cover.

When the EEPROM data is successfully saved, the Lamp of ADF front blinks 3 times and "o" (upper half) is displayed on the Function No. Display.

If the EEPROM data fails to be saved, the Lamp does not light and "c" is displayed on the Function No. Display.

NOTICE

If EEPROM data is saved successfully, the scanner writes some information on the Panel PCA which disables the usage of the Panel PCA. So this Panel PCA cannot be used anymore and the Panel PCA is required to be replaced. Unless the Panel PCA is replaced, the error "E6" always appears on the panel at power on.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyos	shi I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-61 Maintenance Manual				
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	ai I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	ord on page 2. DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6					CUST.	
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	ai I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ		
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	K APP	R. DESC	RIPTION		_	DELL	PFU LIMITED Page 176			6/257	
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		Page	1/	0/23/	

Chapter 7 Basic Operation and Daily Care

7-1 Basic Operation

7-1-1 Turn ON/OFF the Scanner

(1) Turning ON the scanner

Press the power button on the Operator panel.

The scanner is turned ON, and the Power LED on the Operator Panel lights in green.

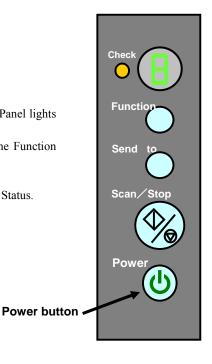
Also, while the scanner is being initialized, the indication of the Function Number Display changes as follows.

"8"
$$\rightarrow$$
 "P" \rightarrow "0" \rightarrow "1"

The indication "1" means that the Operator Panel is in the Ready Status.

(2) Turning OFF the scanner

Hold the Power button down for at least two seconds.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614 Maintenance Manual				
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6				
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	PTPAU354U-BUXXV6				
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	FU LIMITED Page 177/			7/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	1/	11231	

7-1-2 Loading Documents on the ADF for Scanning

- 1. Align the edges of the documents.
 - 1) Confirm that all the documents have the same width.
 - 2) Check the number of sheets in the document stack.

 The standard number of sheets that can be loaded on the scanner is as follows:
 - A4/Letter-size paper or smaller that makes a document stack of 5mm or less
 - Maximum 50 sheets at A4/Letter, 20 lb., or 80 g/m²
- 2. Fan the documents as follows:
 - 1) Select a stack of documents 5mm or less high.
 - 2) Hold the document with both hands and fan it out several times.
 - 3) Turn the document by 90 degrees, and then fan it in the different orientation again.
 - 4) Align the document edges.

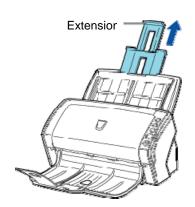


3. Load the document on the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit).

Set the documents face-down in the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit) (so that the side to be scanned faces towards the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit)).



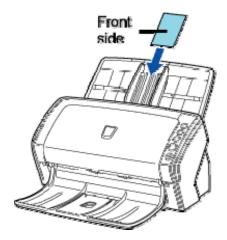
Pull out the extension to support the document when necessary.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan	/fi-614PR		
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No. PIPAU3540-BUXX/6				
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	17	8/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada CH	HECK K.	Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	1/	01231

Note: This scanner can scan ID cards through the ADF with the following precautions.

- You can place up to three cards at a time into the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit). If the card is embossed (i.e., a card with raised lettering), place one card at a time.



- It is recommended that smooth cards be placed face down in the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit).
- The card to be scanned should be within the ISO7810 compliance, type ID-1.

Dimensions: 3.4 inch (height) x 2.1 inch (width)/ 86 mm x 54 mm

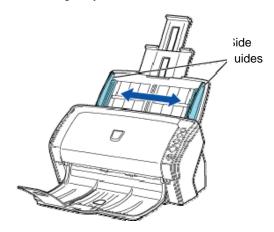
Thickness: 0.056 inches / 1.4 mm or less

Material: PVC (Poly vinyl chloride) or PVCA (Polyvinyl chloride acetate)

- * Before scanning your card, test with a dummy card of the same material to see if it can be fed into the ADF properly.
- Cards that are excessively rigid or less flexible may not feed smoothly and excessive noise may occur.
- Cards should be clean from oil and without labels.
- Cards cannot be scanned when the imprinter is installed.
- 4. Adjust the side guides to the width of the documents.

Move the side guides so that they touch both sides of the documents.

If there is any space between the side guides and the edges of documents, the scanned image may be skewed.



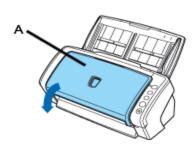
08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda	A.Miyo	shi I.F	-ujioka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan	/fi-614PR		
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai I.F	-ujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai I.F	-ujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	NS	CHEC	K AF	PPR.	DESC	RIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 179				9/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.O)kada	CHEC	K Ł	<.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		Page	17.	91231

Notes:

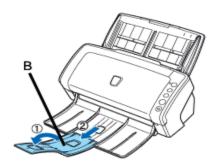
The stacker prevents document sheets from dropping after they are scanned.

Lift the stacker or stacker extension and swing it forward by inserting your fingertips into the indentation(s) on the scanner as shown in the figure below.

fi-6140/fi-6130

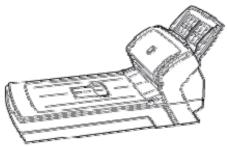


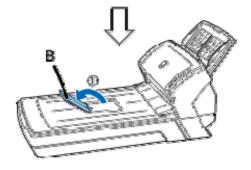




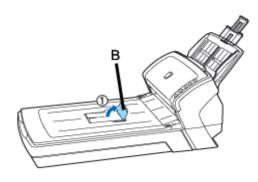
- A. Stacker
- B. Stacker extension







When the document size to scan is A5 or larger in length



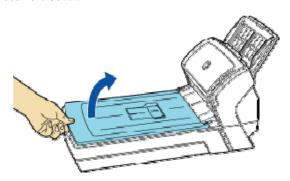
When the document size to scan is A6 or larger in length and A5 or narrower in width (To avoid damage to the stacker extension, do not open it wider than the right angle.

5. Start up the scanner application, and scan the document.

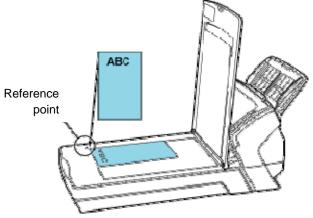
08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	da A	A.Miyos	shi I.I	.Fujiok	a Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-6 Maintenance Manual				
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	da	T.Anza	ai I.I	.Fujiok	a Refer	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. DRAW DADA 02540 DOV						VIC	CUST.	
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	da	T.Anza	ai I.I	.Fujiok	a Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	No. P1PA03540-B0XX/6				
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	iN (CHEC	K A	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	PFU LIMITED Page 180			0/257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada	CHEC	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page 18		01231	

7-1-3 Loading Documents on the Flatbed for Scanning fi-6240/fi-6230

1. Lift up the Document Cover.



2. Load the document on the document bed with the scanning face down and the top left corner aligned with the reference point.



- 3. Gently close the Document Cover.
- 4. Start up the scanner application, and scan the document.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	oka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	oka R	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	этаг разу			No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ			
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	ΒN	CHEC	CK	APPF				DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	1/257		
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.O	kada	Cl	IECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	1/23/

7-2 Daily Care

↑CAUTION

The glass surface of the ADF becomes very hot during the operation of the scanner.

Before you start to clean the inner parts of the scanner, disconnect the AC adapter from the power outlet, and wait for at least 15 minutes to let the glass cool down.

Do not turn off the scanner when you clean the Feed and Eject rollers.

As a guideline, clean the ADF every 5,000 scanned sheets. The scanner must be cleaned more frequently when the following documents are used.

- Documents of coated paper
- Documents with printed text or graphics almost covering the entire surface
- Chemically treated documents such as carbonless paper
- Documents containing a large amount of calcium carbonate
- Documents written by pencil
- Documents on which the toner is not fused sufficiently

Note: Do not use point thinner or other organic solvents instead of ethyl alcohol.

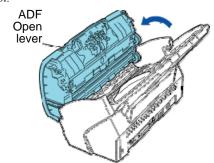
7-2-1 Cleaning the ADF

How to clean:

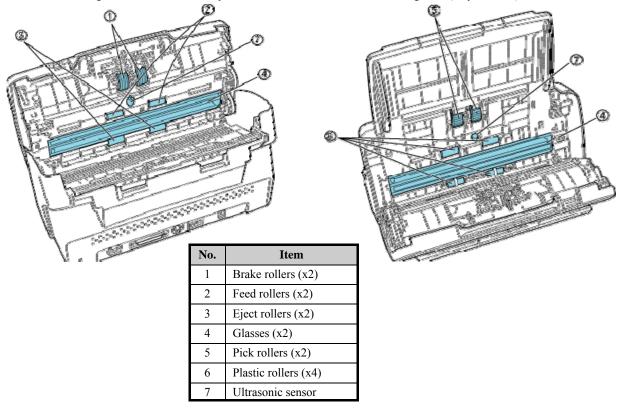
1. Open the ADF by pushing on the ADF open lever and turning the ADF cover to the front.



Be careful, the ADF cover may close and pinch your finger.

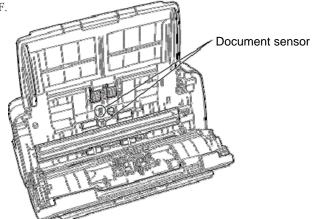


2. Clean the following locations with a soft, dry cloth or a cloth moistened with cleaning fluid (ethyl alcohol).



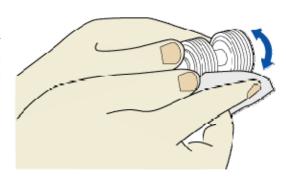
08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	1.3			No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ		
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF				DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	10	2/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	10	21231

Note: To avoid damaging the document sensors, tale care that the cloth does not get hooked into them when cleaning the inside of the ADF.



- Brake roller

Lightly clean the Brake roller along the grooves on the roller taking care not to scratch the roller surface. When cleaning the Brake roller, remove it from the scanner. For how to remove the Brake roller, refer to Section 7-3-3 "Replacing the Brake rollers."



- Pick roller

Lightly clean the Pick roller along the grooves on the roller taking care not to scratch the roller surface. Take particular care in cleaning this roller as black debris on it adversely affects the pickup performance.

- Plastic roller

Lightly clean the Plastic roller taking care not to damage the roller surface. Take particular care in cleaning this roller as black debris on it adversely affects the pickup performance. Be careful not to damage the sponges beside the rollers.

- Glass

Clean lightly.

If the glass is dirty, vertical black streaks may appear in the scanned images.

- Ultrasonic sensor

Clean lightly with a dry cloth.

If the glass is dirty, vertical black streaks may appear in the scanned images.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda .	A.Miyos	shi	I.Fujio	ka Re	efer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai	I.Fujio	ka Re	efer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DAY	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai	I.Fujio	rate of the second of the seco			No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ			
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHEC	K	APPF	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	3/257		
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Ok	kada	CHE	ECK	K.Okad	da		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	31231

- Feed roller/Eject roller

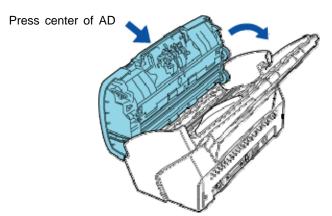
Rotate the rollers in the following procedure:

- Open the ADF when the indication of the Function Number Display is not "P" or "0."
 If you open the ADF when the indication of the Function Number display is "P" or "0," the Feed rollers/Eject rollers will not rotate even you perform the operation below.
- 2) Simultaneously hold down the Send to and Scan/Stop buttons on the Operator Panel. The Feed rollers/Eject rollers start to rotate slowly.

CAUTION

All the Feed rollers/Eject rollers turn at the same time. When cleaning the Feed rollers or Eject rollers, be careful not to touch the other rotating Feed rollers/Eject rollers.

- 3) Hold a soft cloth moistened with cleaning fluid (ethyl alcohol) against the surface of the rotating Feed rollers so that it lightly cleans the surface of the rollers. Take particular care when cleaning these rollers as black debris on these rollers affects pickup performance. As a guideline, seven presses of the Send to and Scan/Stop buttons make the Feed rollers/Eject rollers to rotate one full turn.
- 3. Press down on the center of the ADF to return it to its original position until the ADF button locks.



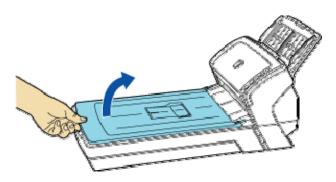
Note: When the ADF has returned to its original position, make sure that it is completely closed. Feeding errors may occur if the ADF is not closed completely.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid					No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	1 5			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	10	4/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	10	4/23/

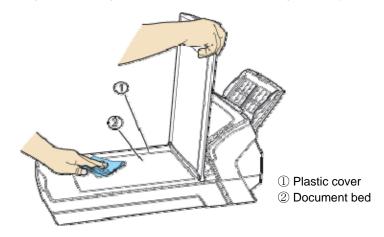
7-2-2 Cleaning the Flatbed **fi-6240/fi-6230**

How to clean:

1. Open the document cover.



2. Clean the following locations using a soft cloth moistened with cleaning fluid (ethyl alcohol).



Note: Do not allow moisture to get inside the device during cleaning.

- 3. Wait for cleaned parts to dry.
- 4. Gently close the document cover.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio				No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ		
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK .	APPR	1 0			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	5/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	31231

7-3 Replacing the consumables



The glass surface of the ADF becomes very hot during the operation of the scanner. Before you replace the consumables, disconnect the AC adapter from the power outlet, and wait for at least 15 minutes to let the glass cool down.

7-3-1 Consumables

The scanner has the following consumables which users need to replace at the following intervals. To check the number of scanned documents, go to Maintenance mode (Section 6-1-6) or the [Software Operation panel] (Section 7-3-2).

Table 7-3-1

No.	Part name	Specifications	Standard replacement	How to check the number	How to replace
			cycle	of scanned documents	
1	Brake roller	PA03540-0001	200,000 sheets or one year	Section 6-1-6	Section 7-3-3.
2	Pick roller	PA03540-0002	200,000 sheets or one year	Section 7-3-2.	Section 7-3-4.

The replacement cycles above are rough guidelines for the case of using A4/Letter woodfree or wood containing paper 64g/m² (17lb). This cycle varies according to the type of the paper used and how frequently the scanner is used and cleaned.

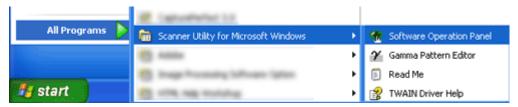
Note: Use only the specified consumables to avoid document feeding trouble.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujic	oka Refert	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	1.9			No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ		
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	D DECEDIRATION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	6/257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	0/23/

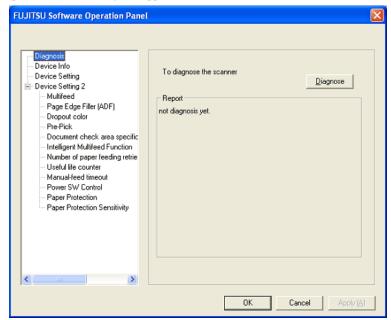
7-3-2 Checking and Resetting the Consumables Counters

For confirming the abrasion of consumables and resetting the counters, use [Software Operation Panel] on your computer as shown below.

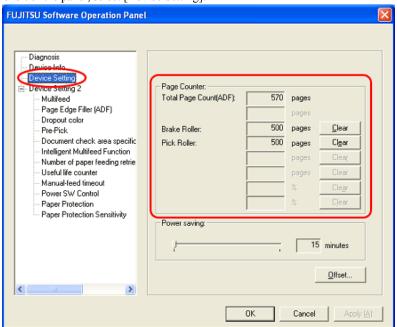
- 1. Confirm is the scanner is connected correctly to the computer, and then turn on the scanner.
- 2. From the [start] menu, select [All Programs] [Scanner Utility for Microsoft Windows] [Software Operation Panel].



→ The [Software Operation Panel] dialog box appears.



3. From the list on the left of the panel, select [Device Setting].

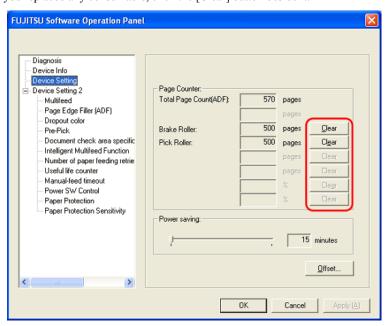


08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	rto Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujic				No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO		
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	1 0			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	7/257	
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CH	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	11231

You can confirm the following information in this panel:

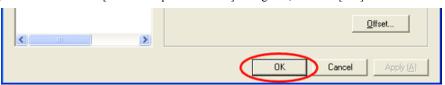
Total Page Count (ADF)	Total scanned sheets
Brake Roller	Number of sheets scanned since last replacement of the Brake roller
Pick Roller	Number of sheets scanned since last replacement of the Pick roller
Remaining Ink	Remaining ink in the imprinter's (sold separately) ink cartridge.
	(Displayed only when the imprinter option is used.)

4. If you replaced any consumable, click the [Clear] button beside it.



- 5. Click the [OK] button on the displayed confirmation message.
 - → The counter is reset to 0.

 (The remaining ink indication (percentage) is reset to 100.)
- 6. If you want to close the [Software Operation Panel] dialog box, click the [OK] button.



[Consumables Replacement Message]

The following message may appear while using the scanner:

When you click the [Ignore] button, this message disappears and scanning continues. You may be able to continue scanning for a while, however, it is recommended that you replace the consumable as soon as possible. To stop the scanning and replace the consumable right away, click the [Cancel] button.

For the replacement of consumables, refer to the following sections. Pick roller: Section 7-3-3

Brake roller: Section 7-3-4

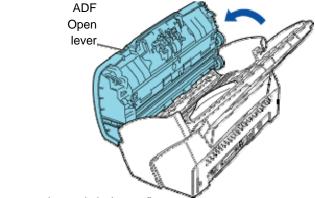


08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	da A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujio	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	da T.Ar	nzai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	da T.Ar	nzai	I.Fujic				No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO		
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK	APPF	1.9			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	8/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	10	01231

7-3-3 Brake roller replacement

Refer to Section 7-3-1 for the specification of the Brake roller.

- (1) Remove any documents from the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit).
- (2) Open the ADF by pulling the ADF open level and turning the ADFF cover to the front.



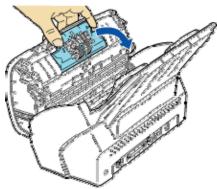
CAUTION

Be careful, the ADF cover may close and pinch your finger.

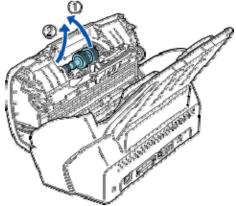
(3) Remove the Brake roller from the scanner.

1) Grab both sides of the Brake roller cover, and press to the inside and pull down (towards you), as shown in the

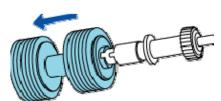
illustration below.



2) Lift up the right side of the Brake roller and remove the right shaft. Then pull the left shaft out of its hole to remove it.

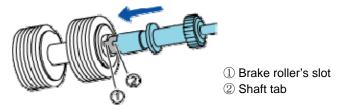


(4) Remove the Brake roller from the shaft.

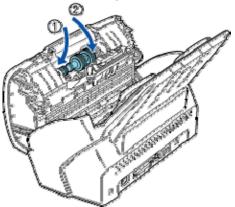


08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	oka F	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	- I to			No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ			
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	ΞN	CHEC	CK	APPF	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1			DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	9/257		
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.O	kada	CH	IECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	10	91231

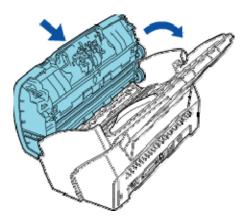
(5) Insert the shaft to the new Brake roller aligning the shaft tab with the slot of the Brake roller.



- (6) Attach the Brake roller to the scanner in the reverse order of removing.
 - 1) Set the left side of the Brake roller into place first, then fix the right side of the roller.



- 2) Close the Brake roller cover.
- (7) Close the ADF. Press down on the center of the ADF to return it to its original position until the ADF button locks.



(8) Reset the Brake roller counter (Section 7-3-2).

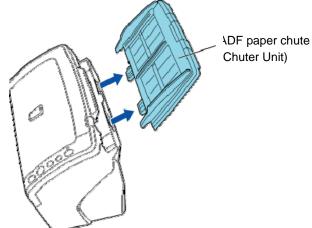
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic					No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	1 0			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	10	0/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	19	0/23/

7-3-4 Pick roller replacement

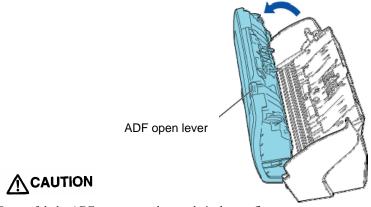
Refer to Section 7-3-1 for the specification of the Pick roller.

(1) Remove any documents from the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit) and remove the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit)



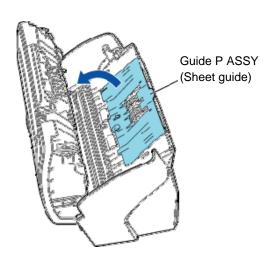


(2) Open the ADF by pulling the ADF open lever and turning the ADF cover to the front.



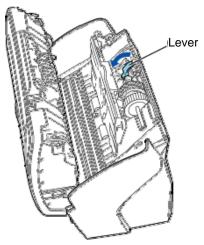
Be careful, the ADF cover may close and pinch your finger.

- (3) Remove the Pick roller from the scanner.
 - 1) Pinch the knobs on the Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide) and lift up the GUIDE P ASSY (Sheet Guide) to remove it.

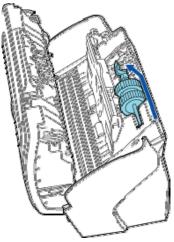


08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	da	A.Miyos	hi I.Fujid	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE		fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614 Maintenance Manual				
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	da	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.					
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	da	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	P1PAU354U-BUXX/6					
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N.	CHECK	(APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 191/25			1 /257			
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.O)kada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	Pro Liivii i ED Page 1917			1/23/			

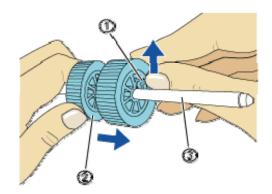
2) Rotate the Pick roller lever in the direction of the arrow.



2) Slide the Pick roller in the direction of the arrow, and then lift it up to remove the shaft from the hole.



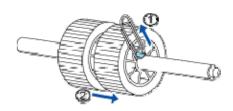
(4) Remove the Pick roller from the shaft while lifting up the tab on the Pick roller.



- ① Tab
- 2 Pick roller
- ③ Shaft

CAUTION

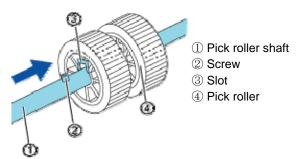
If you lift the pick roller tab with your fingernail, it may hurt your fingernail. Use a paper clip to lift the pick roller tab if you cannot do it with your finger.



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	oka I	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenar			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujic	oka l	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.An	zai	I.Fujic	oka l	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	□ P1PΔU354U-BUX X/b			
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	GΝ	CHE	CK	APPF	₹.	DESC	RIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 192/25			0.1257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.C	Okada	CH	HECK	K.Ok	kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ai PFU LIIVII I ED Pi			19	21231

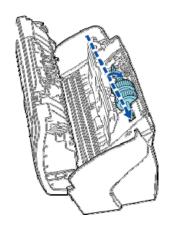
(5) Attach a new Pick roller.

Insert the new Pick roller aligning the screw on the shaft with the slot in the Pick roller.

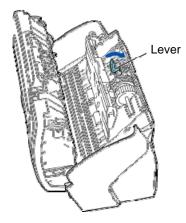


Note: Make sure that the Pick roller is correctly attached. The incompletely-attached Pick roller might cause document jams or other feed errors. When attaching the Pick roller to the shaft, make sure that the roller's tab clicks into place.

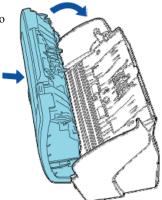
- (6) Attach the Pick roller to the scanner in the reverse order of removing.
 - 1) Set the right side of the Pick roller into place first, then fix the left side to the roller.



2) Rotate the Pick roller lever in the direction of the arrow.



- 3) Close the Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide).
- (7) Close the ADF. Press down on the center of the ADF to return it to its original position until the ADF button locks.



- (8) Attach the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit) to the scanner
- (9) Reset the Pick roller counter. (Refer to Section 7-3-2.)

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A.	Miyoshi	I.Fujic	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	nda T	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	nda T	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No. P1PA03540-B0XX/6				
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 193/257			2 /257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okad	ada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	rai PFU LIMITED Page			19	31231

Chapter 8 Imprinter (Optional)

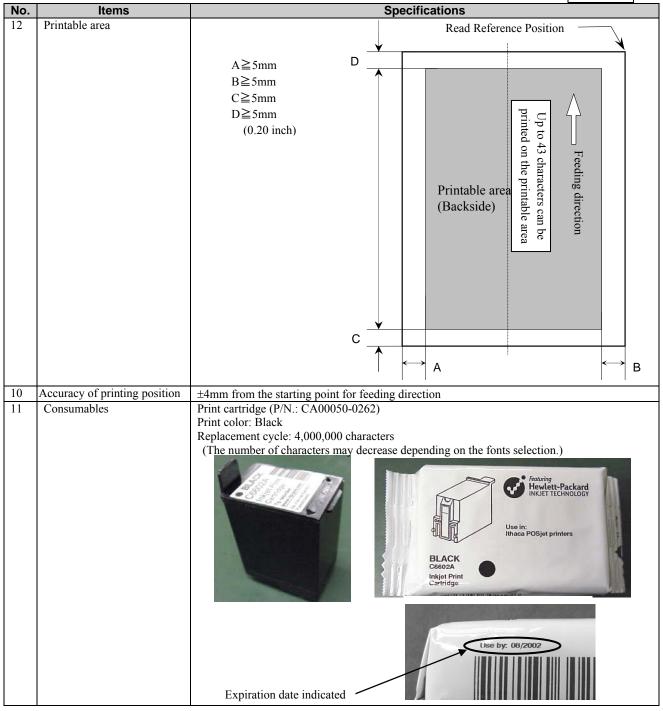
8-1 Imprinter Specifications

8-1-1 Printing Functions

	Items		Specifica	แบบเอ												
1	Printing method	Thermal inkjet printing														
2	Print timing	Post imprinting (imprinting	after scanning the image)													
3	Printing direction	Document feeding direction	1													
4	Printing side	Back side														
5	Printing characters	Alphabet (52 kinds): A~Z, a	a~z													
		Numeric Characters (10 kin	ds): 0, 1~9													
		Symbols (32 kinds): ! " # \$		=>?@[\]^ '{	} ~											
		* Printing characters cannot	be downloaded.													
		* Special characters cannot	be printed													
		* Character spacing cannot	he specified													
6	Maximum character	43 characters	oe specifica.													
7	Printing direction	15 characters														
,	Timing direction															
			Feeding direction	ABC 00 1	Feeding direction											
		Feeding direction		ABC 001												
			ng directio		10											
			0 15 1 1	0 $\bar{\epsilon}$	0 dir											
			() 2.	0 2) Sign											
		O ctio		1 9												
			M	-	$\mid \mid \stackrel{\epsilon}{} \mid \mid B \mid$											
			< □ □		A											
		(Back side)		(Back side)	(Back side)											
		(Back side)	(Back side)	(Back side)	(Back side)											
		Normal: 0°	180 ° (horizontal)	90°	270° (vertical)											
		Narrow: 0°	180° (horizontal)													
8	Character size	Normal, Bold: 2.91 (H) x 2.														
	(vert x hori)	2.82 (H) x 2.	91 (W) mm (vertical orient	ration)												
		Virtual body size (dot cente														
		Narrow: 2.91 (H) x 2.12 (W														
9	Dot matrix of	Normal, Bold Horizontal														
	character		entation: 9 dots (vertical) x	12 dots (horizontal)												
		Virtual body size (dot cente														
	<u> </u>	Thin Horizontal orientatio		2 dots (vertical) x 7 dots	(horizontal)											
10	Character pitch	3.53mm (Normal), 2.54 (Na														
11	Document	Paper weight: 52 ~ 128 g/m	4													
	requirement	Documents supported by fi-	6130/fi-6140.	4												
		Documents with glossy sur		and art paper which may	take longer time for the											
		ink to dry cannot be printed	on.													

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614F Maintenance Manual				
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST					
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No. P1PA03540-B0XX/6					
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPR	R. DESC	RIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 194/257			4 /257		
Design	n July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ai PFU LIMITED Page			19	4/23/	

Section 8-1-1



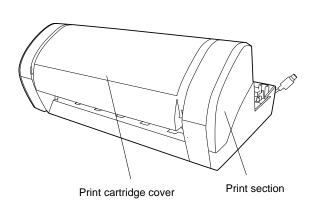
8-1-2 Environmental Specifications

No.	Items	
1	Outer dimensions (mm)	301 (W) x 251 (D) x 139 (H) mm / 11.85(W) x 9.88 (D) x 5.47 (H) in.
		(Imprinter only. Interface cable not included)
		301 (W) x 253 (D) x 203 (H) mm / 11.85 (W) x 9.96 (D) x 7.99 (H) in.
		(With scanner. Interface cable, Chuter Unit, and Stacker not included.)
2	Weights	2.8kg (6.18lb) or less
3	Shipping dimensions	364 (W) x 462 (D) x 314 (H) mm / 14.3 (W) x 18.19 (D) x 12.37(H) in.
4	Shipping weight	4.5kg (9.93lb) or less
5	Ambient condition	Temperature: 10 to 35 °C (50 to 95 °F) Humidity: 20 to 80%

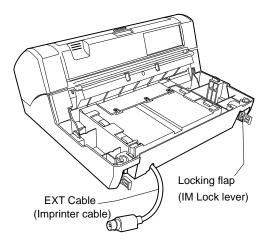
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revis	sion F	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614F Maintenance Manual				
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revis	ion F	Record on	page 2.	DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.					
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revis	ion F	Record on	page 2.	No. P1PA03540-B0XX/6					
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTIC	N			PFU LIMITED Page 195/257			5 1257		
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada			APPR.	T.Anzai	zi PFU LIIVII I ED Pa			19	31231	

8-1-3 Appearance kmprinter unit>

Front side



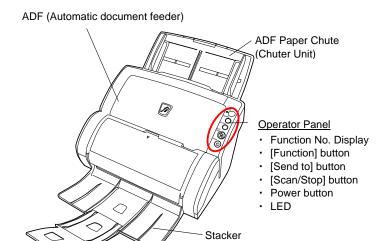
Rear side

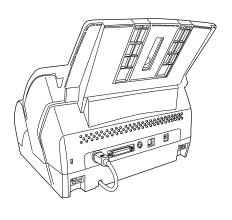


<Imprinter with Scanner Installed>

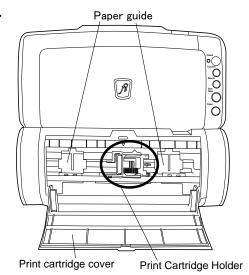
Front side

Rear side



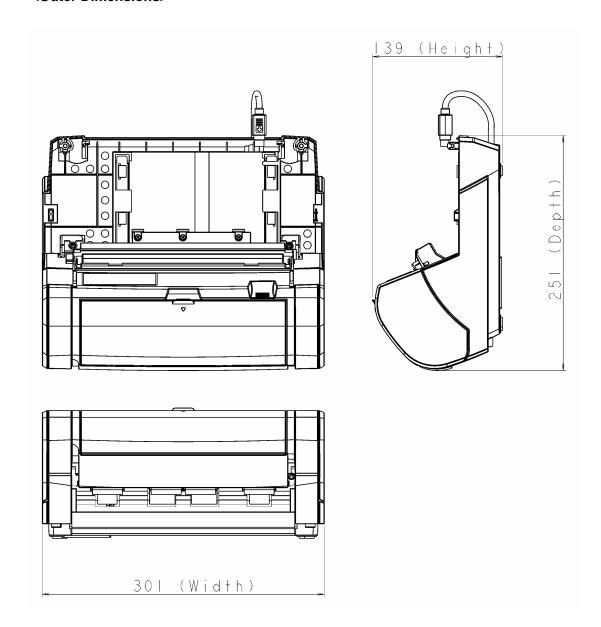


Open Print Cartridge Cover



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda	A.Miyo	shi	I.Fujic	oka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-61 Maintenance Manual				
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai	I.Fujic	ka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST				
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai	I.Fujic	oka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	P1PAU3540-BUX X/6 —				
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	ΝÊ	CHEC	K	APPF	₹.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	10	6/257	
Design	n July 27,	2007	K.C	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Ol	kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU	Page	19	0/23/		

<Outer Dimensions>



								TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614PR Maintenance Manual				
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on	page 2.	IIILL	l ouer				
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6				
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on	page 2.	No.	P1PAU354U-BUX X/6				
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIP*	PTION		PFU LIMITED Page 197/25			7 /257		
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK K.	.Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		raye	19	11231	

8-1 Imprinter Operation

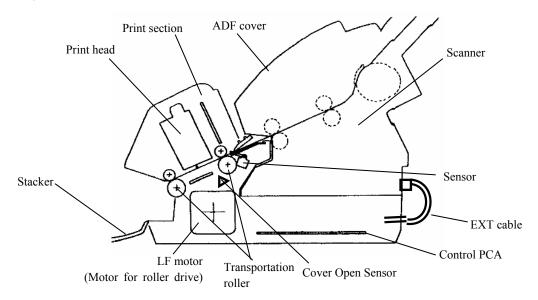
8-2-1 Imprinter Operation

(TBD)

When the scanner is powered ON, it investigates if the Imprinter EXT cable is connected to the scanner. If connected, the firmware judges that the imprinter is installed and drives Imprinter print head, sensor control, and transportation roller by the LF motor. The leading edge of the original fed from the ADF is detected by the Sensor and used for controlling the printing start timing. If the printing section is open, it is detected by the "ADF Cover Open Sensor" (See Section 8-4-12).

To avoid interference between the Imprinter printing section and the ADF cover, open the Imprinter printing section before opening the ADF cover. Follow the procedure in reverse when closing.

If the message to instruct to replace the print cartridge on the PC display, you need to replace the cartridge and reset the remaining ink counter (See Section 8-9-4).



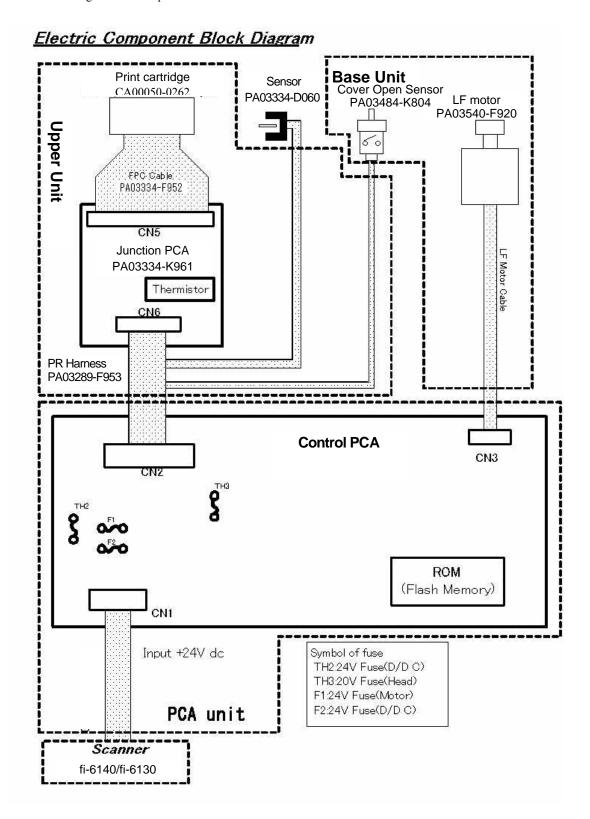
See the following sections for details of the errors and defects related to the Imprinter:

Errors and defects	Recovery method
J1: Paper jam	See Section 4-3-32.
U5: Imprinter Cover open	See Section 4-3-33.
U6: No print cartridge	See Section 4-3-35.
H6: Imprinter fuse blown	See Section 4-3-36
A0~A4: Imprinter alarm	See Section 4-3-37.
No initial operation	See Section 4-3-34.
Print-related errors	See Section 4-3-38.
	See Section 4-3-39.
	See Section 4-3-40.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	iviaintenance ivianuai					
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. P1PA03540-B0XX/6						CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	to Revision Record on page 2. No.				FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ			
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION		_	PFU LIMITED Page 198/2:			0 1257			
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	zai PFU LIIVII I ED			19	01231		

8-2-2 Circuit Block Diagram

The circuit block diagram of the Imprinter is as shown below.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	ka Ref	er to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614 Maintenance Manual DRAW					
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Ref	er to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUS					
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Ref	er to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	No. P1PA03540-B0XX/6					
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	I CHE	CK	APPF	. DESCRIPTION				DELL	LIMITED	Page	10	9/257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007 k	K.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada APPR. T.Anzai		PFU		rage	19	91431			

8-3 Unpacking and Installation of Imprinter

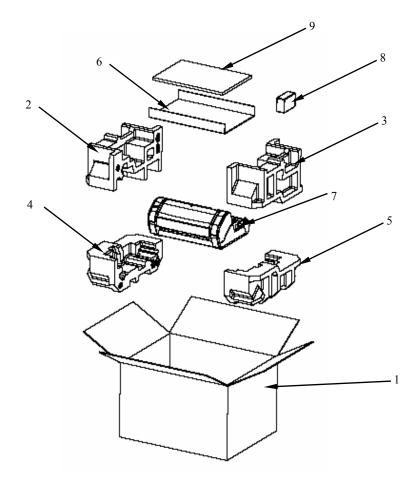
8-3-1 Unpacking the Imprinter

Follow the procedure below to unpack the Imprinter. Make sure that all the accessories are included in the package.

- 1. Remove the tape to open the package box.
- 2. Remove the accessories and the partition.
- 3. Remove the cushions TL/TR, then Imprinter.
- 4. Remove the imprinter from the polyethylene bag.
- 5. Remove the tape protecting the Imprinter.

The following table lists the packaging configuration.

No.	Items	Quantity	Remarks
1	Package box	1	
2	Cushion TL	1	
3	Cushion TR	1	
4	Cushion BL	1	
5	Cushion BR	1	
6	Partition	1	
7	Imprinter	1	
8	Print Cartridge	1	
9	Operator's Guide, Packaging list	1	



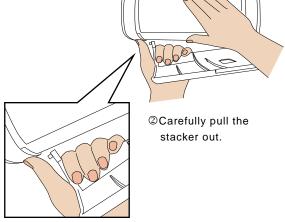
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujio	oka Ref	er to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	zai	I.Fujio	ka Ref	er to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	zai	I.Fujio	ka Ref	er to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	N CHE	CK	APPF	R. DE	SCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	20	0/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 I	K.Okada	CHI	ECK	K.Okada	à	APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	20	01231

8-3-2 Installing the Imprinter

Install the Imprinter in the following procedure.

- 1. Press the 🖰 button to switch off the scanner and disconnect the AC cable.
- 2. Remove the stacker from the scanner.
 - 1) Hold the left side of the stacker with left hand.
 - 2) While pressing on the scanner with your thumb, pull the stacker gently away from the scanner.





① Press your thumb on the scanner.

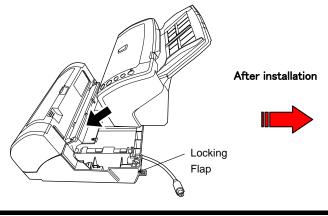
3) Once the left arm of the stacker has been released from the scanner, remove the right arm.

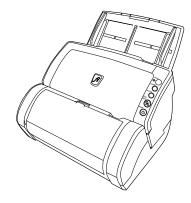
You must remove the stacker before installing the scanner to the Imprinter.



3. Install the scanner on to the Imprinter.

Holding the scanner above the rear side of the imprinter, gently mount the scanner onto the imprinter while lowering it forward until it makes contact with the imprinter.

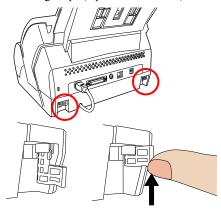




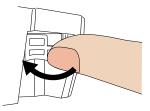
Take care not to pinch your fingers.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisior	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	20	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K	.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	TEU		rage	20	1/23/

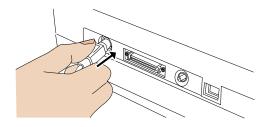
4. Raise the Locking Flaps (2 places on the rear).



5. Swing the Locking Flaps inwards until they are locked into place.

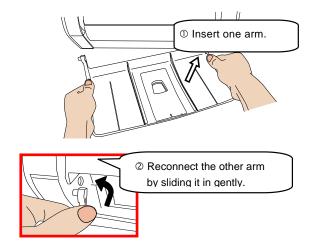


6. Connect the Imprinter cable (EXT cable) to the connector in the rear of the Scanner.



The Imprinter will not work if the EXT cable is not connected to the Scanner.
Scanning without the EXT cable connection can cause documents to jam inside the Imprinter.

7. Replace the stacker (removed in step 2) to the Imprinter.



8. Connect the AC cable to the scanner.

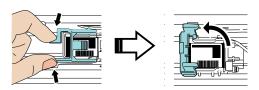
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi I.	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I.	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I.	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK A	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	20	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHEC	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	20	21231

8-3-3 Loading the Print cartridge

Load the Print cartridge as follows:

When installing or replacing the print cartridge, be careful not to insert it out of place.

- 1. Confirm that the scanner is turned OFF.
- 2. Open the Print Cartridge Cover by grasping its center and turning it towards you.
- 3. Remove the packing tape from the Print Cartridge Holder and the Paper Guides.
- 4. Open the Print Cartridge Holder by pinching and lifting up its locking lever with your fingers.



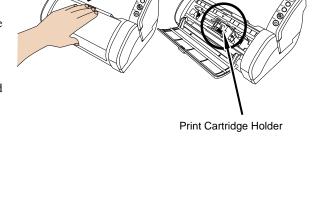
5. Remove the new print cartridge from its pouch.



6. Remove the protection tape from the Print cartridge.

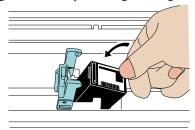


Do not touch the metal part of the cartridge nor put the tape back on again.



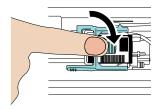
									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240)/fi-614PR
80	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	11116	Maintenan	ice Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	20	3/257
Design	n July 27.	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK K	(.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		raye	20	13 / 23 /

7. Place the print cartridge into the holder as shown on the right with its tab positioning to the right.

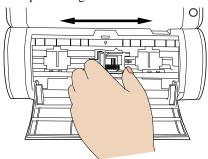


Be careful not let the print cartridge touch or catch onto the print circuit film.

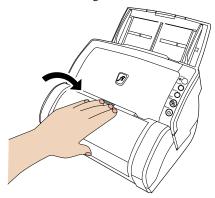
8. Lower the locking lever of the Print Cartridge Holder until it locks in and fixes the cartridge in place.



9. Position the Print Cartridge Holder along where the document will pass through.



10. Close the Print Cartridge Cover.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	20	4/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	20	41231

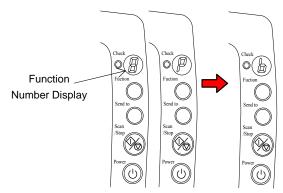
8-3-4 Operation Test

After installing the Imprinter, check if the printing operation can be done in the Offline Print Test mode of the scanner.

1. While holding down the Function button on the Operator Panel, press the(1) button.

Keep the Function button pressed until the \circlearrowleft button is pressed.

2. Release the Function button when the Function Number Display changes from [P] to [b].



- 3. Place a blank paper into the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit).
- Use A4 or Letter size paper. If the size is smaller than A4 or Letter,, printing may not complete successfully.
- Confirm that the Print cartridge is positioned within the paper width.
- 4. Press the Scan/Stop button to test.
 - => The paper will be fed into the ADF, and the Imprinter will print out the <u>Print Test Patterns</u> starting at 5mm from the paper edge (the range of error is ±4mm).



Print Test Patterns

Test pattern 1 (horizontal):

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[¥]^ `00000000

Test pattern 2 (horizontal):

abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz $\{|\} \sim 00000000$

Test pattern 3 (horizontal):

!"#\$%&()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@00000000

Test pattern 4 (vertical):

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[¥]^_`00000000

Test pattern 5 (vertical):

abcdefghijklmnopgrstuvwxyz{|}~00000000

Test pattern 6 (vertical):

!"#\$%&()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@00000000

When multiple sheets of paper are placed in the ADF, the Test Print repeats patterns from 1 through 6. The numbering data portion "00000000" changes from 0 (Zero) with increment of 1 (one).

(One test pattern is printed at a time. Press the Scan/Stop button to continue printing the next test pattern.)

7. To stop Offline Print Test mode, press the **U** button. The scanner will switch off.

										TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240)/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	da A.Miy	oshi I	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	11116	Maintenan	ice Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	da T.An	zai I	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	da T.An	zai l	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK A	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	20	5/257
Design	n July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada	K.Okada APPR. T.Anzai			PFU		rage	20	131231

8-4 Maintenance Parts for the Imprinter

POS	Description	Part Number	Qua	ntity	Reference for appearance	Reference for replacement	Remarks
1	SENSOR	PA03334-D060	1		8-4-1	8-6-10	Shared with fi-512PR
2	IMP CT	PA03540-K926	1		8-4-2	8-6-9	
3	IMP JNT	PA03334-K961	1		8-4-3	8-6-7	Shared with fi-512PR
4	PR HARNESS	PA03289-F953	1		8-4-4	8-6-13	Shared with fi-512PR
5	IM FELT	PA03289-F954	1		8-4-5	8-6-14	Shared with fi-512PR
6	LF MOTOR	PA03540-F920	1		8-4-6	8-6-12	
7	IM HOLDER ASSY3	PA03540-E971	1		8-4-7	8-6-8	
8	IM HOLD LEVER3	PA03540-F922		1	8-4-8	8-6-5	
9	FPC CABLE	PA03334-F952		1	8-4-9	8-4-9	
10	IM PINCH ASSY3	PA03540-E970	4		8-4-10	8-6-6	
11	IM LOCK LEVER	PA03540-F921	2		8-4-11	8-6-15	
12	SWITCH	PA03484-K804	1		8-4-12	8-6-11	Cover open detection Shared with fi-6140/fi-6130.
13	GUIDE SHEET	PA03289-K910	1		8-4-13	8-6-16	Shared with fi-512PR
14	PAPER GUIDE3	PA03540-Y766	2		8-4-14	8-8-2	

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK .	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	20	6/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	20	0/23/

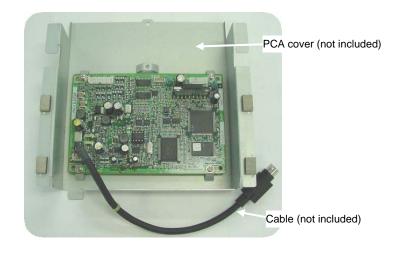
8-4-1 **SENSOR**

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
SENSOR	PA03334-D060	Shared with fi-512PR.



8-4-2 IMP CT

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
IMP CT	PA03540-K926	PCA cover and cable is not included.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK .	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	20	7/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	20	111231

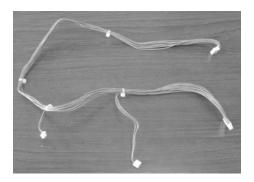
8-4-3 IMP JNT

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
IMP JNT	PA03334-K961	Shared with fi-512PR.



8-4-4 PR HARNESS

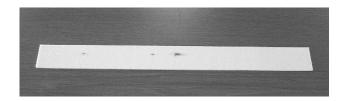
Description	Parts No.	Remarks				
PR HARNESS	PA03289-F953	Shared with fi-512PR.				



08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.M	.Miyoshi	I.Fujic	oka Ref	er to Revisior	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE		fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-61 Maintenance Manual			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Ref	efer to Revision Record on page 2. DRAW DADA 02540 DOV					VIC	CUST.		
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Ref	er to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	No.	No. P1PA03540-B0XX/6				
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CI	CHECK	APPF	R. DE	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	20	208/257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Okad	da CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU	Page	20	01231		

8-4-5 IM FELT

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
IM FELT	PA03289-F954	Shared with fi-512PR.



8-4-6 LF MOTOR

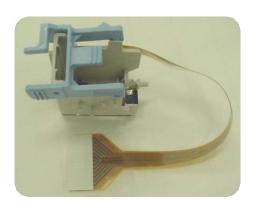
Description	Parts No.	Remarks
LF MOTOR	PA03540-F920	



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	shi I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614 Maintenance Manual				
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUS				CUST.	
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	ai I.Fuji	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No. PTPAU3540-BUXX/6					
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	K APP	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	20	0./257	
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page			20	209/257	

8-4-7 IM HOLDER ASSY3

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
IM HOLDER ASSY3	PA03540-E971	



8-4-8 IM HOLD LEVER3

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
IM HOLD LEVER3	PA03540-F922	



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614 Maintenance Manual				
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.				
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ		
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	21	0/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page				.10/23/	

8-4-9 FPC CABLE

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
FPC CABLE	PA03334-F952	



8-4-10 IM PINCH ASSY3

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
IM PINCH ASSY3	PA03540-E970	



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614 Maintenance Manual			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. DRAW P1PA0354					10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	21	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED Page			21	1/23/

8-4-11 IM LOCK LEVER

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
IM LOCK LEVER	PA03540-F921	



8-4-12 SWITCH (Cover open detection)

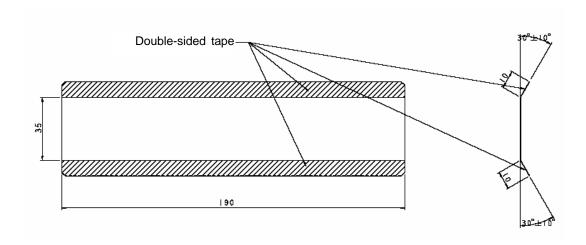
Description	Parts No.	Remarks
SWITCH	PA03484-K804	Shared with fi-6140/fi-6130



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisior	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	r to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisior	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. DES	DESCRIPTION				LIMITED	Dogo	21	2/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CH	ECK	K.Okada	da APPR. T.Anzai					Page		21231

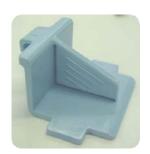
8-4-13 GUIDE SHEET

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
GUIDE SHEET	PA03289-K910	Shared with fi-512PR



8-4-14 PAPER GUIDE3

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
PAPER GUIDE3	PA03540-Y766	



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda <i>i</i>	A.Miyos	hi I.Fuji	oka Re	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.					fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	i I.Fuji	oka Re	fer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	i I.Fuji	oka Re	fer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHECK	(APP	R. DE	DESCRIPTION				DELL	LIMITED	Page	21	3/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Ok	kada	CHECK	K.Okad	а		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	21	31231

8-5 Troubleshooting

See Chapter 4 "Troubleshooting."

										TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR	
08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miyo	oshi I.Fu	ıjioka F	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.					Maintenance Manual				
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ıjioka F	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	W P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST				
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ıjioka F	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	ΝÜ		
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK AP	PR. [DESCRIPTION				DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	21	4/257	
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Ok	kada APPR. T.Anzai				PFU		Page 2		4/23/	

8-6 Disassembly/Assembly

This chapter describes warning and cautions, how to remove or replace covers and maintenance parts for the Imprinter to ensure the normal operations.

8-6-1 For Safety operation

Preventative maintenance is recommended on the Imprinter at the following intervals.

- Every 12 month, or at the periodic maintenance of the connected scanner

Notes at replacement work

- Clean the place where replacement work is conducted.
- Be sure to follow the described procedures. Never loosen the non-disassembly screws.
- Avoid loss of the removed parts.
- Check the quantities and shapes of the parts after replacement.
- Follow the removal procedure in reverse for the installation procedure.

ACAUTION

Machine damage

Static Electricity changed human body due to rubbed clothes may cause the damage of electric element.

When repairing the substrate as a System Board or a Main Control Board, put a wrist strap or use a conductive mat to avoid ESD.

Injury

Be careful not to get your fingers, hair, clothes or accessories caught in a moving part. It may cause injury.

- Perform the periodic maintenance at the same time when it is performed for the image scanner.
- Refer to Section 8-9 "Daily Care" for how to clean in detail.

8-6-2 Maintenance tool

Special tools to maintain this Imprinter are shown in the table below.

No.	Tools	Remarks	When to use
1	Phillips screwdriver	M3, M4 screws	
2	Small flat-blade screwdriver		Removing E ring, lever switch
3	Plier		Removing clamps
4	Alcohol	Ethyl alcohol	Cleaning
5	Spring gauge	500g	Adjusting belt tension

8-6-3 (Reserved)

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda	A.Miyo	shi	I.Fujic	oka R	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.					fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	nda	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DAY	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	nda	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN.	CHEC	K	APPF	₹. D	DESCRIPTION				DELL	LIMITED	Page	21	5/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Ol	kada	CH	IECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	21	31231

8-6-4 Removing Imprinter

<Removal>

- 1. Remove the Imprinter.
- (1) Remove the EXT cable.
 - Pull two IM LOCK LEVERs (circles below) to the rear side of the scanner to remove.



(2) Lift up the scanner diagonally backward to remove.



								TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on p	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on p	page 2.	DRAW	V P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST			CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Re	evision Record on p	page 2.	No.	1 11 A03340-B0AA/0			
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPT	TION		DELL	LIMITED	Page	21	6/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK K.	.Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		raye	21	01231

8-6-5 IM HOLD LEVER3

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 8-4-8 for the part number of the replacement part.

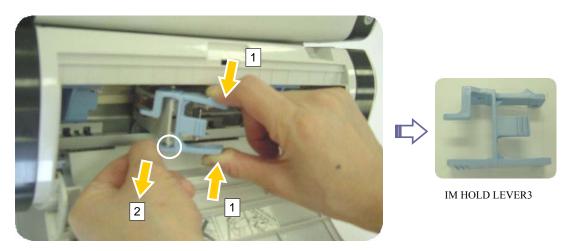
<Removal>

1. Remove the Print Cartridge.

(1) Referring to steps (1) \sim (4) of Section 8-9-4 "Replacing the Print Cartridge," remove the print cartridge.

2. Remove the IM HOLD LEVER3.

(2) Pinching the right side of the IM HOLD LEVER3 [], open the fulcrum (circle below) at the lower left [2], remove the IM HOLD LEVER3.



<Installation>

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosh	ni I.Fujic	oka Refert	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refert	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	21	7/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada C	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	21	11231

8-6-6 IM PINCH ASSY3

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 8-4-10 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

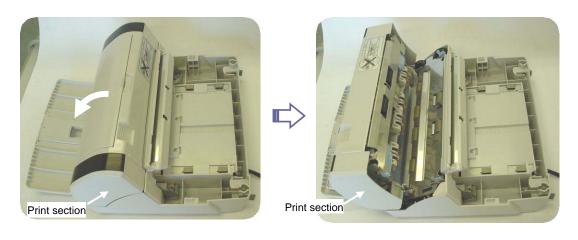
<Removal>

1. Remove the Imprinter.

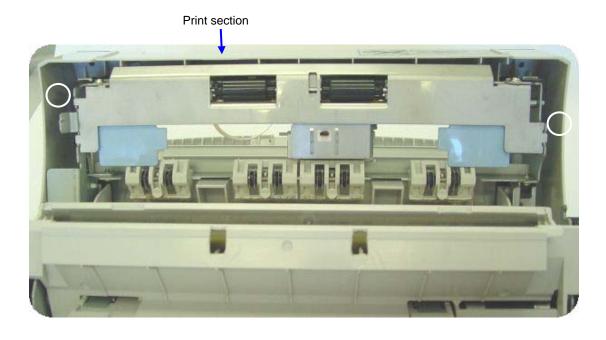
(1) Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter," remove the Imprinter.

2. Remove the IM PINCH ASSY3.

(2) Open the Print section in the direction of the arrow.

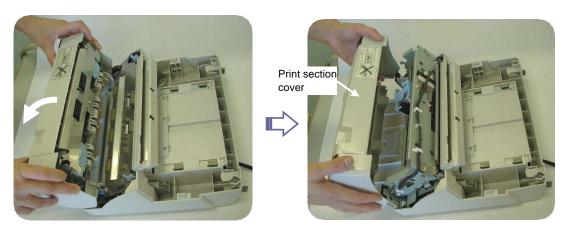


(3) Remove two screws A (circles below) on the Print section.

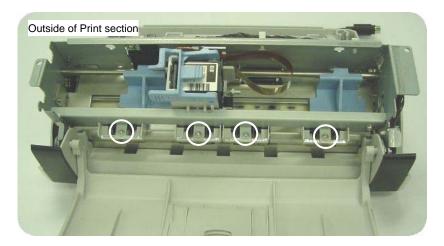


08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda .	A.Miyos	shi	I.Fujio	ka Re	efer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	ai	I.Fujio	ka Re	efer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	ai	I.Fujio	ka Re	efer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHEC	K	APPR	R. DE	ESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	21	8/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Ok	kada	CHE	ECK	K.Okad	da		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	21	01231

(4) Remove the Print section cover in the direction of the arrow.



(5) Remove four screws A (circles below) on the IM PINCH ASY3 from outside of the Print section.



(6) Remove four screws (circles below) on the IM PINCH ASY3 from inside of the Print section.



									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	a Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.		Maintenan	ice iviar	iuai	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 BOY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujiok	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	Λ0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	21	9/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	21	71431

<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Check that two tabs (circles below) of the Print section are engaged.



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	22	0/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page		.01231

8-6-7 IMP JNT



- Refer to Section 8-4-3 for the part number of the replacement part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

1. Remove the Imprinter.

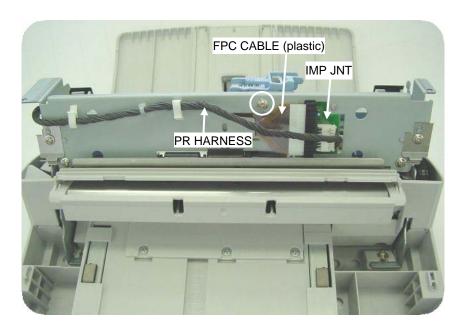
(1) Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter," remove the Imprinter.

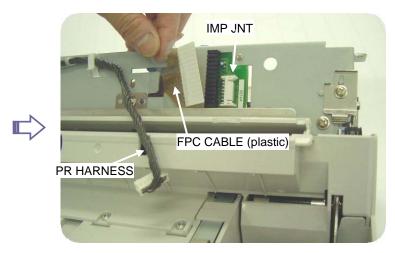
2. Remove the Print section cover.

(2) Referring to steps (2) \sim (4) of Section 8-6-6 "IM PINCH ASSY3," remove the Print section cover.

3. Remove the IMP JNT.

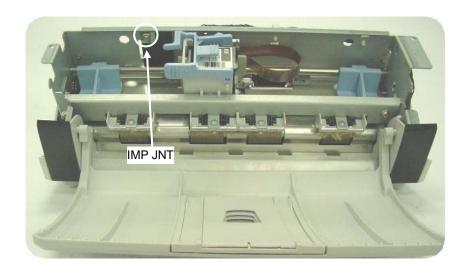
- (3) Disconnect the PR HARNESS from the IMP JNT.
 - Remove the screw B (circle below) of the FPC CABLE (plastic), and then disconnect the FPC CABLE from the IMP JNT.

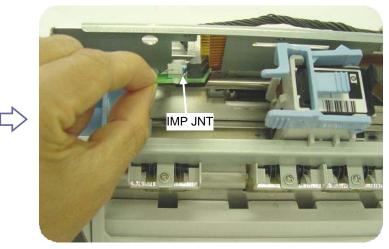




08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyos	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	22	1/23/

(4) Remove the screw B (circle below) of the IMP JNT to remove the IMP JNT.





<Installation>

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPR	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage		21231

8-6-8 IM HOLDER ASSY3/FPC CABLE

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 8-4-7 for the part number of the IM HOLDER ASSY3.
- Refer to Section 8-4-9 for the part number of the FPC CABLE.

<Removal-IM HOLDER ASSY3>

Remove the Imprinter.

(1) Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter," remove the Imprinter.

2. Remove the Print section cover.

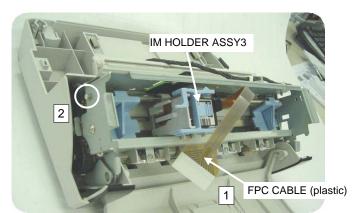
(2) Referring to steps (2) ~ (4) of Section 8-6-6 "IM PINCH ASSY3," remove the Print section cover.

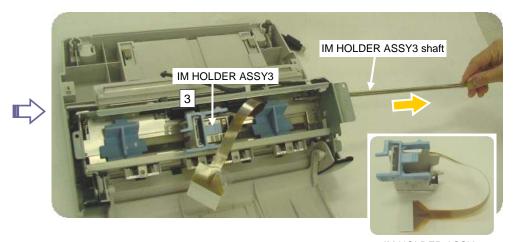
3. Remove the PR HARNESS and FPC CABLE (plastic).

(3) Referring to step (3) of Section 8-6-7 "IMP JNT," disconnect the PR HARNESS and FPC CABLE.

4. Remove the IM HOLDER ASSY3.

- (4) Pull the FPC CABLE (plastic) out of the opening on the frame, and withdraw it to the IM HOLDER ASSY3 side. 1
 - Remove the E-ring (circle below) on the IM HOLDER ASSY3 shaft. 2
 - Disconnect the IM HOLDER ASSY3 shaft in the direction of the arrow, and then remove the IM HOLDER ASSY3. 3





IM HOLDER ASSY3

<Installation-FPC CABLE>

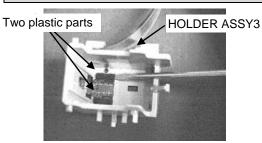
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyos	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.0	Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	22	31231

^{*} To remove the FPC CABLE, go to next page.

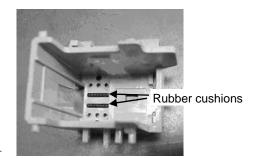
<Removal-FPC CABLE>

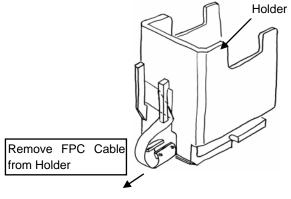
(5) Remove two plastic parts from the Holder with a flat-blade screwdriver.

Be careful not to lose the rubber cushions at the bottom of the Holder.

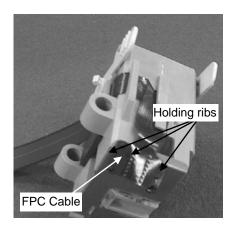


(6) Remove one end of the FPC CABLE from the HOLDER.





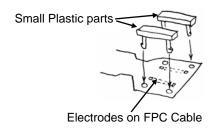
(7) Withdraw the FPC CABLE from all the cable holding ribs.



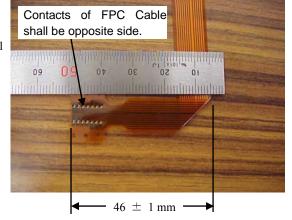
<Installation-FPC CABLE>

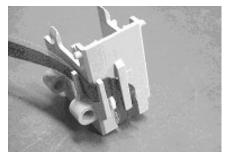
Follow the removing procedure in reverse by taking care of the following point.

- 1. Fold the new FPC Cable as shown in the right figure.
- 2. Small plastic parts come with the FPC Cable. Insert two small plastic parts into the holes of the FPC Cable near electrodes.



3. Route the new FPC Cable as shown in the following figure.





08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	da	A.Miyos	hi I.Fujid	oka Refe	er to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	da	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refe	r to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	da	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refe	r to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+0-00	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N.	CHECK	(APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	4/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.O	kada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	22	4/23/

8-6-9 IMP CT



- Refer to Section 8-4-2 for the part number of the maintenance part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

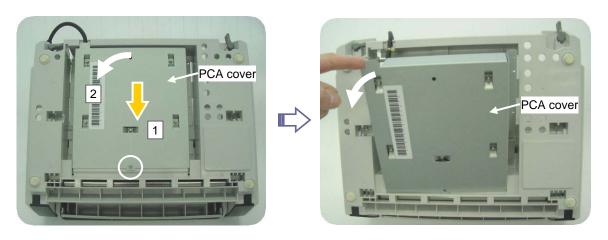
<Removal>

1. Remove the Imprinter.

(1) Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter," remove the Imprinter.

2. Remove the IMP CT.

- (2) Remove the screw A (circle below) at the bottom of the Imprinter.
 - Move the PCA cover downward [1], and then lift up its upper side to remove [2].



(3) Remove the fixing screw C (circle below) and two connectors (squares below).



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi I	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujiol	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK A	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	5/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	CK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage		31231

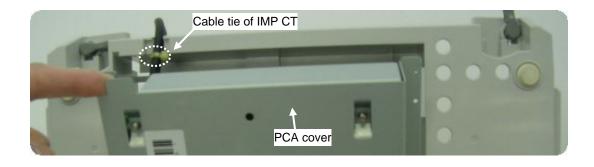
- (4) Disconnect the cable (circle below) on the IMP CT.
 - Remove four screws C (circles below), and then remove the IMP CT from the PCA cover.



<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Place the cable tie of the IMP CT inside of the Imprinter bottom.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	22	6/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	22	0/23/

8-6-10 **SENSOR**

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 8-4-1 for the part number of the maintenance part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

1. Remove the Imprinter.

(1) Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter," remove the Imprinter.

2. Remove the Print section cover.

(2) Referring to steps (2) \sim (4) of Section 8-6-6 "IM PINCH ASSY3," remove the Print section cover.

3. Remove the PCA cover.

(3) Referring to steps (2) \sim (3) of Section 8-6-9 "IMP CT," remove the PCA cover.

4. Remove the SENSOR.

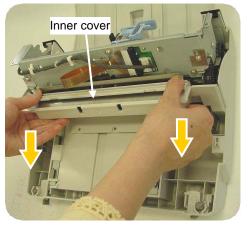
(4) Remove three screws A (circles below) on the inner cover.

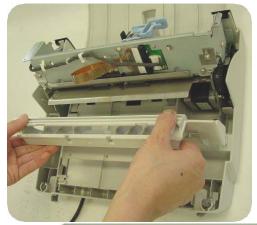
Note: There are two hooks (square below) at the both edges. Lifting up the inner cover a little to pull towards you.



Inner cover

(5) Draw out the internal cover to the rear of the Imprinter to remove.



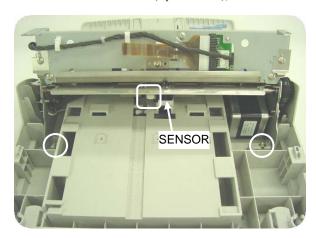




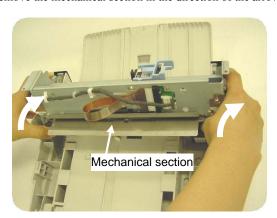
Inner cover

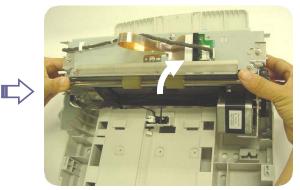
									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240)/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ice Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN BNY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	a Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	7/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	22	111431

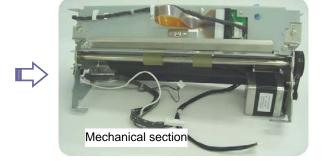
(6) Remove the SENSOR connector (square below), and two screws C and washers at the mechanical section.



(7) Remove the mechanical section in the direction of the arrow to remove.

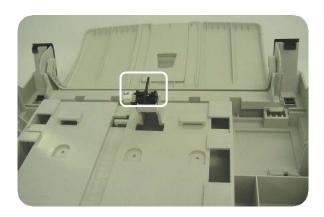






						TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	1111	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 BOY	Y/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	8/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	HECK K.C	Okada APPR. T.Anzai	PFU		rage	22	01231

(8) Unlatch the craw (square below) that holds the SENSOR to remove the SENSOR.

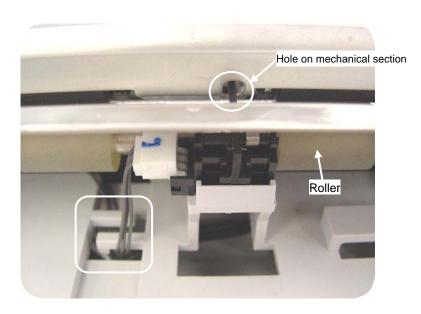


<Installation>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Make sure that the SENOR claw is securely latched.

Note: Route the SENOR lever above the roller shaft, and insert it into the hole on the mechanical section. Connect the SENSOR cable to the position marked with a square in the photo below.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPE	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	22	9/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	22	31231

8-6-11 SWITCH (Cover open detection)

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 8-4-12 for the part number of the maintenance part.

<Removal>

1. Remove the Imprinter.

(1) Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter," remove the Imprinter.

2. Remove the Print section cover.

(2) Referring to steps (2) ~ (4) of Section 8-6-6 "IM PINCH ASSY3," remove the Print section cover.

3. Remove the PCA cover.

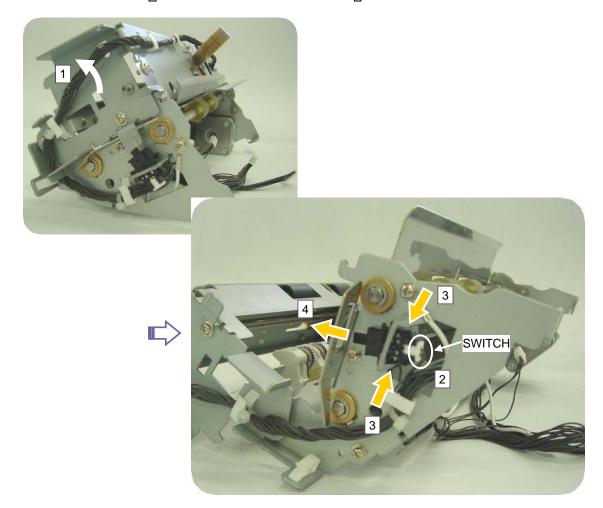
(3) Referring to steps (2) \sim (3) of Section 8-6-9 "IMP CT," remove the PCA cover.

4. Remove the Inner cover and Mechanical section.

(4) Referring to steps (4) \sim (7) of Section 8-6-10 "SENSOR," remove the inner cover and mechanical section.

5. Remove the SWITCH.

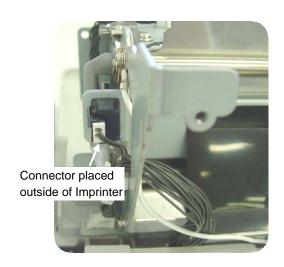
- (5) Open the mechanical section cover [1], and then disconnect the SWITCH cable (circle below) [2].
 - Unlatch the SWITCH claws 3, and then move the SWITCH to remove 4.



									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to F	Revision Re	ecord on	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to F	Revision Re	ecord on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 BOY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to F	Revision Re	ecord on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	Λ0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRI	IPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	23	0/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK K.	.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	23	01231

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Place the SWITCH connector outside of the Imprinter.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA035	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	(.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	TFU		rage	23	1/23/

8-6-12 **LF MOTOR**



- Refer to Section 8-4-6 for the part number of the maintenance part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

1. Remove the Imprinter.

(1) Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter," remove the Imprinter.

2. Remove the Print section cover.

(2) Referring to steps (2) \sim (4) of Section 8-6-6 "IM PINCH ASSY3," remove the Print section cover.

3. Remove the PCA cover.

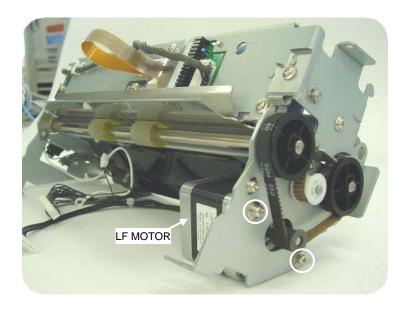
(3) Referring to steps (2) \sim (3) of Section 8-6-9 "IMP CT," remove the PCA cover.

4. Remove the Inner cover and Mechanical section.

(4) Referring to steps (4) \sim (7) of Section 8-6-10 "SENSOR," remove the inner cover and mechanical section.

5. Remove the LF MOTOR.

(5) Remove two LF MOTOR screws C (circles below), and then remove the LF MOTOR.



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyosh	i I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida	T.Anzai	I.Fujid	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN (CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada C	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	23	21231

<Installation>

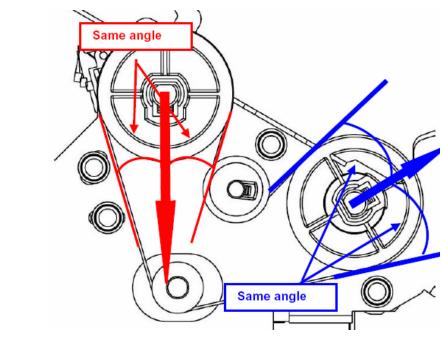
05

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: Adjust LF MOTOR belt tension.

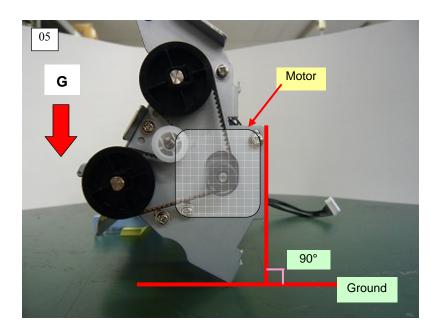
Set the FEED PULLEY in the direction as shown below. (Error: ±25°)

05

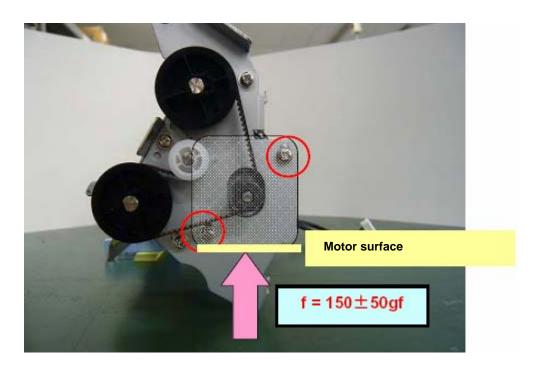


05

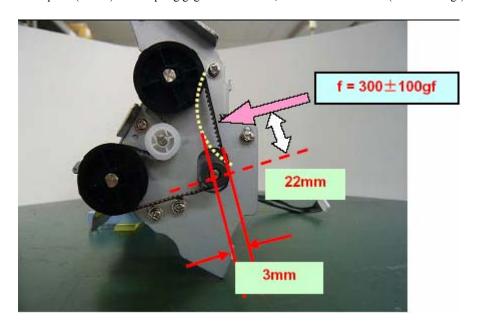
(1) Place the unit vertically as shown below.



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ıda <i>i</i>	A.Miyos	hi I.Fuji	oka Re	fer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	i I.Fuji	oka Re	fer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anza	i I.Fuji	oka Re	fer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHEC	(APP	R. DE	SCI	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	3/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Ok	kada	CHECK	K.Okac	а		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	23	31231



(3) Pushing the reference point (22mm) with a spring gage to bend 3 mm, check the belt tension ($f=300\pm100gf$).



									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer to F	Revision R	ecord on	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to F	Revision R	ecord on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 BOY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refer to F	Revision R	ecord on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	Λ0	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRI	IPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	23	4/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada CH	IECK K.	.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	23	4/23/

8-6-13 PR HARNESS



- Refer to Section 8-4-4 for the part number of the maintenance part.

<Removal>

1. Remove the Imprinter.

(1) Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter," remove the Imprinter.

2. Remove the Print section cover.

(2) Referring to steps (2) ~ (4) of Section 8-6-6 "IM PINCH ASSY3," remove the Print section cover.

3. Remove the PCA cover.

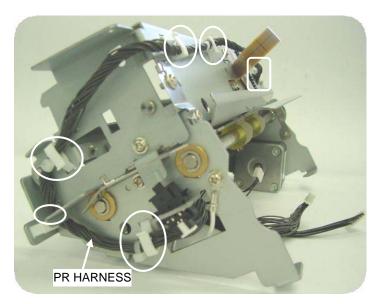
(3) Referring to steps (2) \sim (3) of Section 8-6-9 "IMP CT," remove the PCA cover.

4. Remove the Inner cover and Mechanical section.

(4) Referring to steps (4) \sim (7) of Section 8-6-10 "SENSOR," remove the inner cover and mechanical section.

5. Remove the PR HARNESS.

- (5) Unhook five cable clamps (circles below) for the PR HARNESS.
 - Disconnect the connector (square below) of the IMP JNT, and then remove the PR HARNESS.



<Installation>

08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miy	oshi/	I.Fujio	oka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okac	la T.Ar	nzai	I.Fujio	oka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DAY	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okac	da T.Ar	nzai	I.Fujio	oka R	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK	APPF	R. D	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	5/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CH	IECK	K.Oka	ada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	23	31231

8-6-14 IM FELT



- Refer to Section 8-4-5 for the part number of the maintenance part.
- Refer to Appendix for the specification of the screws.

<Removal>

1. Remove the Imprinter.

(1) Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter," remove the Imprinter.

2. Remove the Print section cover.

(2) Referring to steps (2) \sim (4) of Section 8-6-6 "IM PINCH ASSY3," remove the Print section cover.

3. Remove the PCA cover.

(3) Referring to steps (2) \sim (3) of Section 8-6-9 "IMP CT," remove the PCA cover.

4. Remove the Inner cover and Mechanical section.

(4) Referring to steps (4) \sim (7) of Section 8-6-10 "SENSOR," remove the inner cover and mechanical section.

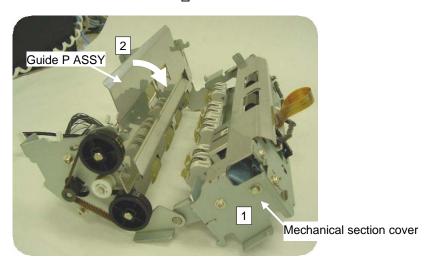
5. Remove the IM FELT.

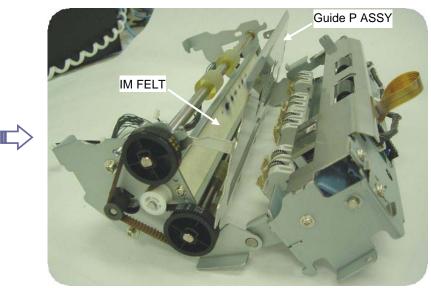
(5) Remove four screws C (circle below) of the Guide P ASSY.



									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240)/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miyo	oshi I.Fu	ijioka Ref	er to Revision	Record on	page 2.	11116	Maintenan	ice Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ijioka Ref	er to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ijioka Ref	er to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK API	PR. DE	SCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	6/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		raye	23	07237

- (6) Open the mechanical section cover.
 Remove the Guide P ASSY 2, and then remove the IM FELT.





<Installation>

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujic	oka Refert	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	ka Refert	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	ka Refert	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	7/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	23	11231

8-6-15 IM LOCK LEVER



- Refer to Section 8-4-11 for the part number of the maintenance part.

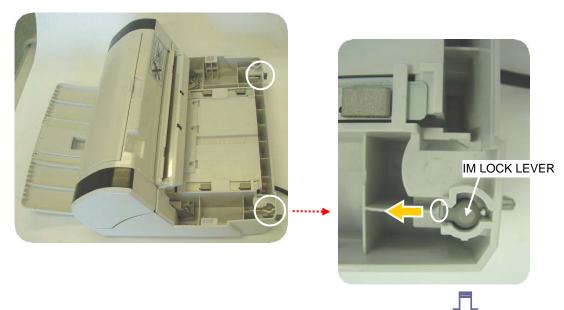
<Removal>

1. Remove the Imprinter.

(1) Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter," remove the Imprinter.

2. Remove the IM LOCK LEVER.

(2) Unlatch the claws of the IM LOCK LEVER (circles below), remove the IM LOCK LEVER.





IM LOCK LEVER

<Installation>

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.An:	zai	I.Fujio	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	8/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	23	01231

8-6-16 GUIDE SHEET

NOTICE

- Refer to Section 8-4-13 for the part number of the maintenance part.

<Removal>

1. Remove the Imprinter.

(1) Referring to Section 8-6-4 "Removing Imprinter," remove the Imprinter.

2. Remove the Print section cover.

(2) Referring to steps (2) ~ (4) of Section 8-6-6 "IM PINCH ASSY3," remove the Print section cover.

3. Remove the PCA cover.

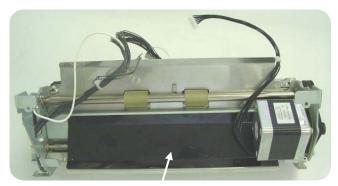
(3) Referring to steps (2) \sim (3) of Section 8-6-9 "IMP CT," remove the PCA cover.

4. Remove the Inner cover and Mechanical section.

(4) Referring to steps (4) \sim (7) of Section 8-6-10 "SENSOR," remove the inner cover and mechanical section.

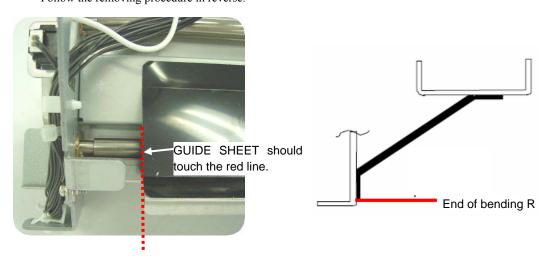
5. Remove the GUIDE SHEET.

(5) Remove the GUIDE SHEET.



GUIDE SHEET

<Installation>



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda	A.Miyo	shi	I.Fujio	oka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai	I.Fujio	ka	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ıda	T.Anz	ai	I.Fujio	oka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	ΝÊ	CHEC	K .	APPF	₹.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	22	9/257
Design	n July 27,	2007	K.C)kada	CHE	ECK	K.O	kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	23	91231

8-7 Adjustment/Settings

See Chapter 6 "Adjustment/Settings."

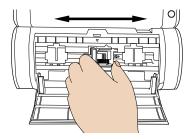
									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240)/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miy	oshi I.Fuj	ioka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	nce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fuj	ioka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fuj	ioka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK APF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELI	LIMITED	Page	24	0/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	24	07237

8-8 Basic Operation and Daily Care of the Imprinter

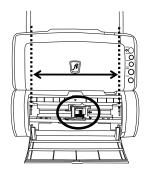
8-8-1 Setting The Print Position

To position the print cartridge for printing:

- 1. Open the Print Cartridge Cover.
- 2. Hold the Print Cartridge Holder as below, and slide it to the left and right within the document width to set it at a suitable print starting position.



- The triangle-shaped protrusion "▲" on the locking lever of the Print Cartridge Holder indicates the current print position on the page.
- In the upper back of the Print Cartridge Holder are document size markings; Use them to adjust for paper sizes and printing positions.
- Put the actual document in the ADF and confirm that the print cartridge is positioned within the document width.



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujio	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujid	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	(APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION		_	DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	24	1/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	24	1/23/

8-8-2 How to Use the Paper Guides

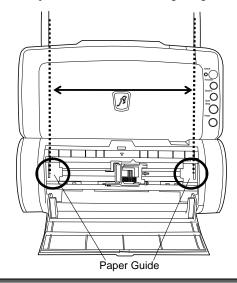
NOTICE

The Paper Guides are maintenance parts. Refer to Section 8-4-14 for the part number of the replacement part.

Use the Paper Guides to prevent against paper jams due to curling of the edges, as shown on the right.

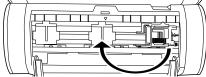
Place the Paper Guides at the ends where the paper edges will pass through.

- 1. Insert the document in the scanner.
- Open the Print Cartridge Cover.
- 3. Slide the Paper Guides to the left and right edges of the paper.

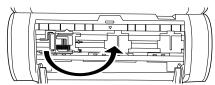


When you wish to print on a section near the edge of wide paper, remove the Paper Guide in order to open space for the print cartridge, and attach the removed guide in the center.

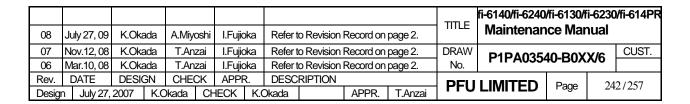
For Right-Edge printing

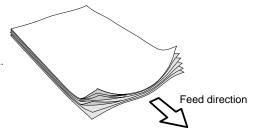


For Left-Edge printing



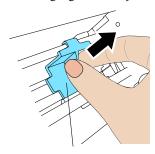
Be careful not to let the Paper Guide touch or catch onto the print circuit film.





<To Remove the Paper Guides>

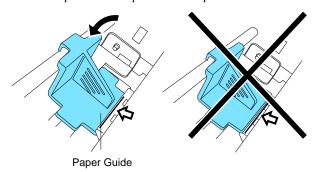
Pressing and holding together with your fingers, as below, lift up and pull away the guide.



Paper Guide

<To Attach the Paper Guides>

1. Put the Paper Guides in place as in the picture on the left below.



2. Push in the top portion of the guide to fit tightly.



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida .	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	24	3/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		Page	24	.31231

8-8-3 Print Setup

You can configure settings for the Imprinter by using the scanner driver's setup dialog box.

FUJITSU TWAIN driver (example)

Click Option button.

In the [Option] dialog box, choose the [Imprinter (Endorser)] tab, and configure the settings for the Imprinter.

The following items can be set:

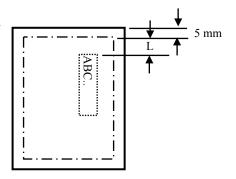
- Imprinter (endorser) valid (F)

Select "Invalid" if you are not going to print with the Imprinter.

Select "Valid" if you are going to print with the Imprinter

- Offset (Y)

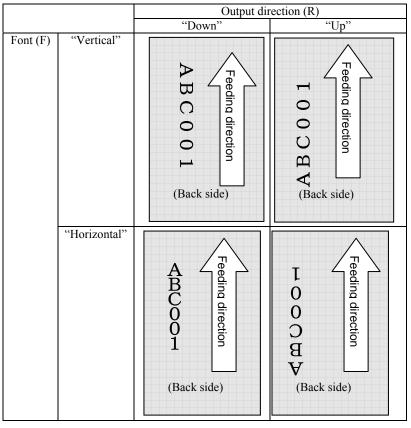
Specify the print position (L) shown in the photo on the right in unit of mm.



08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	ada	A.Miyo	shi	I.Fujic	ıka	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujic	ka	Refer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN	CHEC	K	APPF	₹.	DESCI	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	2/	4/257
Design	n July 27,	2007	K.Oł	kada	СН	IECK	K.Ok	kada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	24	41231

- Output direction (R) and Font (F)

Specify the print direction in the following combination.



- Bold

Input the check mark on this item if you want to make the characters bold.

- Initial value (counter output)

Specify the initial value of the counter output.

- Step (counter output)

Specify the increase and decrease range of the counter.

- Counter revision (counter output)

Specify whether the counter value is added or subtracted.

									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 BOY	V/G	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujiok	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	24	5/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.C	Okada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	24	31431

- Printed character strings

Specify the character strings to be printed. (43 characters at maximum) You can print out the following character strings by the direct input.

Alphabet: A~Z, a~z Numbers: 0, 1~9

Signals: !"#\$%&' () *+, -. /:; <=>?@[\f\]^_ \{|}^

Others: (Space)

(If the space is inserted at the beginning of sentence, the space is ignored.)

IN addition, the following definitions can be used. These definitions can also be selected from the menu displayed by clicking

%YYYY: Prints the scanned year by the Christian year (4 digits)

%YYY: Prints the scanned year by the Japanese year (Heisei)

%YY: Prints the scanned year by the last two digits of the Christian year

%MMM: Prints the scanned month in English abbreviation. "JAN" is printed in January, "FEB" in February, and so on.

%MM: Prints the scanned month in 2 digits. If the month is one digit, "0" is added to the left digit. "01" is printed in January and "12" in December.

%M: Prints the scanned month in the required minimum number of digits. "1" is printed in January and "12" in December.

%DD: Prints the scanned date in 2 digits. If the date is one digit, "0" is added to the left digit. "03" is printed in the 3rd, and "26" in the 26th.

%D: Prints the scanned date in the required minimum number of digits. "3" is printed in the 3rd, and "26" in the 26th.

%HH: Prints the scanned time (hour) in 2 digits on a 24-hour basis. If the hour is one digit, "0" is added to the left digit. "08" is printed at 8 o'clock in the morning, and "14" at 2 o'clock afternoon.

%H: Prints the scanned time (hour) in the required minimum number of digits on a 24-hour basis. "8" is printed at 8 o'clock in the morning, and "14" at 2 o'clock afternoon.

%NN: Prints the scanned time (minute) in 2 digits. If the minute is one digit, "0" is added to the left digit. "02" is printed at 8:02, and "48" at 2:48.

%N: Prints the scanned time (minute) in the required minimum number of digits. "2" is printed at 8:02, and "48" at 2:48.

%0Nud: Prints the counter value which increases and decreases on every page in N digits.

Specifiable counter digits are 5 and 8 digits and they are described as "%05ud" and "%08ud" respectively.

You can specify the initial counter value, how to increase and decrease, etc. in the "Counter" described previously.

This specification is available only at the end of the printing character column.

08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	nda A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	IN DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	ida -	T.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	SN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	24	6/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada Cl	HECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	24	0/23/

8-8-4 Removing Jammed Documents

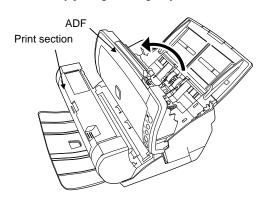
Remove jammed documents as follows:

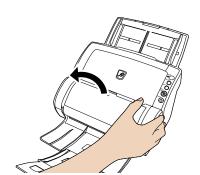
Do not forcefully pull out the jammed documents.

- 1. Remove the documents from the ADF paper chute (Chuter Unit).
- Holding the right side of the Print section, pull it open by turning it towards you.

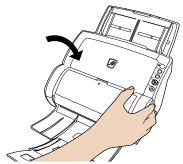
To open the ADF, first open the Print section before proceeding.

3. Open the ADF by pulling it back gently.





- 4. Carefully remove all the jammed documents.
- 5. Close the ADF.
- 6. Close the Print section.



To close the Print section, be sure that the ADF is closed first before closing the Print section.

- Be careful not to pinch your fingers.
- Do not move the Imprinter or scanner while printing.
- When not using the Imprinter for a long period, remove the print cartridge from the Imprinter and store it.
- Each time the Imprinter is turned ON, some ink is initially consumed.
- Do not move the scanner with the Imprinter already installed. The Imprinter may become damaged.

										TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.Miyo	oshi I.Fu	ıjioka Re	efer to	Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILL	Maintenan	nce Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ijioka Re	efer to	Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.An	zai I.Fu	ijioka R	efer to	Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	4U-DUA	ΝÜ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CHE	CK AP	PR. DI	SCR	IPTION			DELI	LIMITED	Page	24	7/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Oka	da		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	24	11231

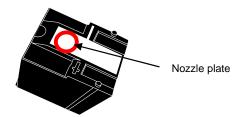
8-9 Cleaning and Consumables

8-9-1 Cleaning the Print Cartridge

Poor quality prints may occur due to blocked ink emission holes in the nozzle plate of the print cartridge. Leaving the Imprinter unused for a long period of time can also cause the ink emission holes to become blocked. When these holes are blocked, clean the nozzle plate.

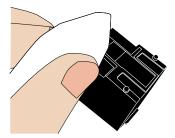
For cleaning, use a dry lint-free cloth (Do NOT use tissue), and gently wipe any dirt and stains off the nozzle plate.

- 1. Press the \circlearrowleft button to turn off the scanner.
- 2. Remove the print cartridge (Refer to Section 8-9-4).



When cleaning, be careful not to touch directly by hand the Nozzle plate or any of the contact parts on the cartridge.

3. Gently wipe any dirt and stains on the nozzle plate.



4. Make sure that all dirt and stains are removed, before installing the print cartridge. (Refer to Section 8-9-4).

When installing or replacing the print cartridge, be careful not to insert it out place.

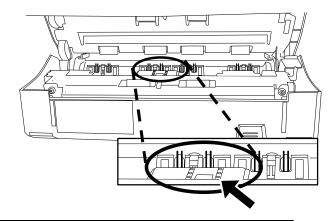
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyosl	hi I.Fujic	oka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anza	i I.Fujic	ka Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPF	R. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	24	8/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada (CHECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	24	01231

8-9-2 Cleaning the Imprinter

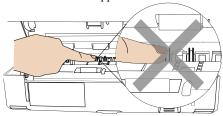
After frequent use, the waste ink will begin to accumulate on the base surface of the Print Cartridge Holder, which can soil printouts. Always maintain the base surface clean.

To assure high quality print outs and long use of the Imprinter, adopt a daily maintenance procedure as given below.

- When cleaning, wipe off gently all dust and ink on the base surface of the holder.
- If the ink has dried, wipe it lightly with a water-moistened cloth.
- 1. Press the 🖰 button to turn off the scanner.
- 2. Open the print cartridge. (Refer to Section 8-9-4).
- 3. Open the Print section.
- 4. Wipe off any dirt or dust on the base surface of the Print Cartridge Holder with a lint-free cloth.



When cleaning, be careful not to touch the metal wheels located behind the upper rollers on the Print section.



- 5. Check that the dirt is wiped off, and then close the Print section.
- 6. Reinstall the print cartridge and close the Print Cartridge Cover (Refer to Section 8-9-4).

08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.N	Miyoshi	I.Fujic	oka Ref	er to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	ka Ref	er to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.	Г.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Ref	er to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	No.	PIPAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CH	HECK	APPF	R. DE	SCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Dogo	24	9/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Okad	da CH	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		Page	24	91231

8-9-3 Cleaning the Imprinter Rollers

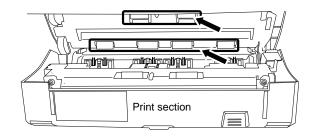
When ink or dust from paper is stuck on the feed roller surfaces, documents may not be fed smoothly. To prevent feed problems, clean the roller surfaces regularly.

Recommended cleaning cycle is every 1,000 sheets. The actual cleaning cycle may be shorter depending on usage and documents.

- 1. Open the Print section.
- 2. Clean the six rubber rollers.

The rollers are located as indicated on the right.

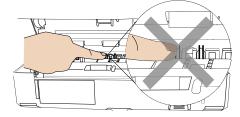
Wipe off any dirt or dust on the roller surface with a lint-free cloth moistened with cleaning fluid (ethyl alcohol).



It may take long before the cleaner vaporizes if a large quantity is used. Wipe off the cleaner completely with a soft lint-free cloth to leave no residue on the surface of the cleaned parts.

To clean the entire surface of each roller, rotate it by holding down both the Scan/Stop and Send to buttons on the Operator Panel of the scanner by the number of times required to make a full turn.

When cleaning, be careful not to touch the metal wheels located behind the upper rollers on the Print section.

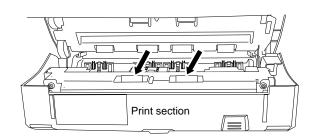


3. Clean the two plastic rollers (black).

The rollers are located inside the Print section as indicated below.

Rotate the rollers with your fingers gently and wipe off any dirt or dust from the roller surface with a lint-free cloth moistened with cleaning fluid (ethyl alcohol).

Confirm that all dirt and dust have been removed from the rollers. Close the Print section.



									TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240			/fi-614PR
08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujioka	Refer t	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	IIILE	Maintenan	ice Mar	nual	
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anzai	I.Fujioka	Refert	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHECK	APPR.	DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	25	0/257
Design	n July 27	2007 K.C	Okada CE	IFCK K	Okada		APPR	T Anzai	PFU		rage	23	0/23/

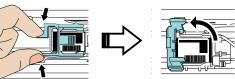
8-9-4 Replacing the Print Cartridge

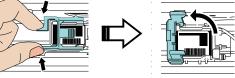
When the message shown on the right appears, replace the print cartridge as soon as possible.

- If you continue to print without replacing the cartridge, your print output will be faded.
- When installing or replacing the print cartridge, be careful not to insert it out of place.

Refer to Section 8-1-1 for the specification of the Print cartridge.

- 1. Press the button to turn off the scanner.
- 2. Open the Print Cartridge Cover by grasping its center and turning it towards you, as shown on the right.
- 3. Open the Print Cartridge Holder by slightly pinching and lifting up its locking lever with your fingers as shown



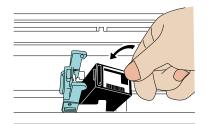


- 4. Remove the old print cartridge from the Print Cartridge Holder as shown on the right.
- 5. Take the new print cartridge out of its pouch and detach the protection tape from the Print cartridge.





6. Place the print cartridge into the holder with its tab pointing to the right.

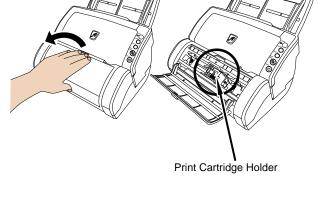


Be careful not to let the print cartridge touch or catch onto the print circuit film.

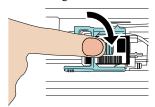
08	July 27, 09	K.Oka	da A	A.Miyoshi	I.Fujio	oka Re	er to F	Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Oka	da 7	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Re	er to F	Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Oka	da 7	T.Anzai	I.Fujio	oka Re	er to F	Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	P IPAU35	1 0-DUA	ΝO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	iN C	CHECK	APPF	R. DE	SCRII	PTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	25	1/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Oka	ada Cl	HECK	K.Okad	а		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	23	1/23/



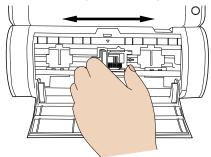




7. Lower the closing lever of the Print Cartridge Holder until it locks in and fixes the cartridge in place.

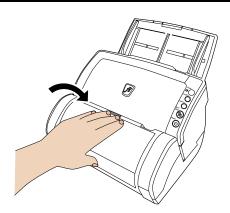


8. Position the Print Cartridge Holder along where the document will pass through.



Printing too close to a document's edge can leave little or no room for further printing. Be sure to position the print cartridge to have enough space.

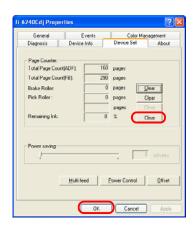
9. Close the Print Cartridge Cover.



- 10. Turn on the scanner.
- 11. Reset the Ink Remaining Counter as follows:

You must reset the Remaining ink counter whenever you replace the print cartridge.

- 1) On the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel].
- 2) Select [Scanners and Cameras].
- On the fi-6130/fi-6140 Scanner icon, right-click and select [Properties] (for Windows XP), or double-click the icon (for Windows 2000, Windows Vista).
- 4) Select [Device Set] tab.
- 5) Click the [Clear] button on [Remaining ink].
- 6) Click [OK] button.
- The confirmation window will be displayed. Click [OK] button
 - =>Remaining ink counter is reset to 100%.

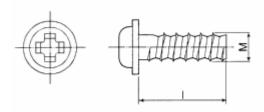


08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	roshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revisior	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan)/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA0354	10 DOV	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	NO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	25	2/257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 k	(.Okada	Cl	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	TFU		rage	23	21231

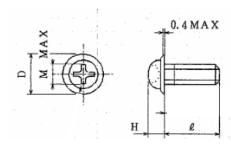
Appendix 1 Screws

The screws used for the device (scanner/ imprinter) are listed below.

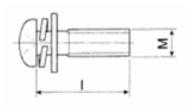
Name in this manual	Description.	Specification	М	
Screw A	PT SCREW	PA83952-5038	3	8



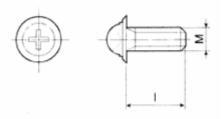
Name in this manual	Description.	Specification	М	L
Screw B		U30L-0010-0030#M3x5	3	5



Name in this manual	Description.	Specification	М	
Screw C	SCREW	RU6SW2N3-08121	3	8

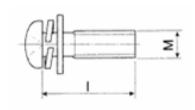


Name in this manual	Description.	Specification	М	L
Screw D	SCREW	RU6SNA3-06121	3	6

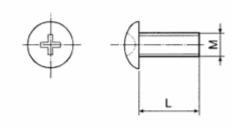


08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.N	Miyoshi	I.Fujic	oka Ref	er to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenar			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.	.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Ref	Refer to Revision Record on page 2. P1PA03540-B0XX/					VIC	CUST.	
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.	.Anzai	I.Fujic	ka Ref	er to Revisio	n Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CH	HECK	APPF	R. DE	SCRIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	25	3/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Okada	da CH	HECK	K.Okada	ı	APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	25.	31231

Name in this manual	Description.	Specification	М	L
Screw E		RU6SW2N2R5-08121	2.5	8



Name in this manual	Description.	Specification	М	L
Screw F	SCREW	CA98001-8785	4#40	5



08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	A.Miyo	oshi	I.Fujiol	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai I	I.Fujiol	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	T.Anz	zai	I.Fujiol	ka Refer	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	FIFAUSS	+U-DUA	NΟ	
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	CHEC	CK /	APPR	. DESC	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	25	4/257
Design	n July 27,	2007 K.	Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	FFU		rage	23	4/23/



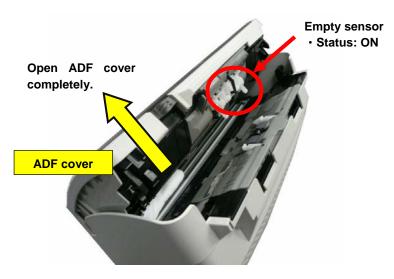
Appendix 2 Emulation Mode

Emulation of the following scanners can be specified on this scanner.

Model name	Scanner that can be emulated
fi-6140	fi-4120C, fi-4120C2, fi-5120C
fi-6130	II 4120C, II 4120C2, II 5120C
fi-6240	fi-4220C, fi-4220C2, fi-5220C, fi-4340C
fi-6230	11 4220C, 11 4220C2, 11 3220C, 11 4340C

To activate the Emulation function, scanner setting needs to be changed. For the configuration method, see below.

1. With the ADF cover open and the Empty sensor status ON (by opening the cover all the way), press the Power button while pressing the Function button. (In this mode, the scanner interface with the host becomes off-line.)



The following is the Function Number Display and the scanner status transition during scanner initialization after the power is turned ON in the procedure above.

<u>y in the procedure above.</u>							
Function No. Display	Scanner status						
8	Initializing						
	\Box						
Function No. Display	Scanner status						
	In Maintenance Mode						
	\Box						
Function No. Display	Scanner status						
20	In Emulation switch mode						

- When the scanner goes into the Maintenance Mode, let go of the Function button.

- When the scanner goes into the Emulation switch mode, close the ADF cover.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okad	da A.N	Miyoshi	I.Fujic	oka Re	fer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240 Maintenan			/fi-614PR
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okad	da T.	.Anzai	I.Fujic	oka Re	fer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	ege 2. DRAW P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUS				CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okad	da T.	.Anzai	I.Fujic	oka Re	fer to	o Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	PIPAUSS	1 0-DUA	ΝO	
Rev.	DATE	DESIG	N CH	HECK	APPF	R. DE	SCI	RIPTION			DELL	LIMITED	Page	25	5/257
Desig	n July 27,	2007	K.Okada	da CH	IECK	K.Okad	a		APPR.	T.Anzai	ן דרט		rage	23.	31231

- 2. During the Emulation switch mode, press the Scan/Stop button to display the current scanner setting.
 - * If the Emulation mode is activated for the first time, the initial value (standard) "0" appears on the Function Number
 - * Example) When fi-5120C (fi-5220C) is selected, "3" appears on the Function Number Display.
- 3. Pressing the Function button changes the displayed number. Press it several times until the number for the model you want your scanner to emulate appears.
 - * Example) If your scanner is fi-6140, to emulate fi-4120C, press the Function button several times until "1" is displayed on the Function Number Display.
 - * Example) If the Function Number Display shows "1" on fi-6240, this scanner is configured as fi-4220C.

Function			Your s	scanner		
No. Display	Emulated model	fi-6140	fi-6130	fi-6240	fi-6230	Remarks
	fi-6140	γ				
	fi-6130		γ			Initial value (standard)
0	O fi-6240			γ		Emulation mode invalid
	fi-6230				γ	
-	fi-4120C	γ	γ			Operates as USB1.1 specification
1	fi-4220C			γ	γ	(Full-Speed) when connected with the USB cable.
2	fi-4120C2	γ	γ			
2	fi-4220C2			γ	γ	
3	fi-5120C	γ	γ			
3	fi-5220C			γ	γ	
4	fi-4340C			γ	γ	ADF scanner (fi-6140, fi-6130) cannot emulate fi-4340C.

- 4. Press the Scan/Stop button to display the selected scanner name (numbers) by turns.

 * The first "-" is a start mark. "SP" signifies "OFF: No display". Switching interval is 0.5 second.

Emulation mode	How to display
fi-6140	"6140" is displayed as below repeatedly. "-" → "6" → "SP" → "1" → "SP" → "4" → "SP" → "0" → "SP"
fi-6130	"6130"is displayed as below repeatedly. "-" →"6" →"SP" → "1" →"SP" →"3" →"SP" → "0" →"SP"
fi-6240	"6240"is displayed as below repeatedly. "-" →"6" →"SP" →"2" →"SP" →"4" →"SP" →"0" →"SP"
fi-6230	"6230"is displayed as below repeatedly. "-" →"6" →"SP" →"2" →"SP" →"3" →"SP" →"0" →"SP"
fi-4120C	"4120"is displayed as below repeatedly. "-" →"4" →"SP" →"1" →"SP" →"2" →"SP" →"0" →"SP"
fi-4220C	"4220"is displayed as below repeatedly. "-" →"4" →"SP""-" →"SP" →"2" →"SP" →"0" →"SP"
fi-4120C2	"41202"is displayed as below repeatedly. "-" → "4" → "SP" → "1" → "SP" → "2" → "SP" → "0" → "SP""2" → "SP"
fi-4220C2	"42202"is displayed as below repeatedly. "-" →"4" →"SP" →"2" →"SP" →"2" →"SP" → "0" →"SP" → "2" → "SP"
fi-5120C	"5120"is displayed as below repeatedly. "-" →"5" →"SP" →"1" →"SP" → "2" → "SP" → "0" →"SP"
fi-5220C	"5220"is displayed as below repeatedly. "-" →"5" →"SP" →"2" →"SP" →"2" →"SP" →"0" →"SP"
fi-4340C	"4340"is displayed as below repeatedly. "-" →"4" → "SP" → "3" → "SP" →"4" →"SP" →"0" →"SP"

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	roshi	I.Fujic	oka Refe	r to Revision	n Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-614P Maintenance Manual			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	rto Revision	Record on	page 2.	DRAW	P1PA03540-B0XX/6 CUST.			
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	ızai	I.Fujic	ka Refe	rto Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	PIPAU304U-BUXX/6			
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	I CHE	CK	APPF	R. DES	CRIPTION			DELL	PFU LIMITED Page 256/257			6 1257
Design	1 July 27,	2007 I	K.Okada	Cl	IECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	Pro Liivii i Ed		Page	23	0/23/

Appendix 2

- 5. If the scanner name (numbers) displayed on the Function Number Display is correct, press the Function button.

 Pressing the Function button displays Screen E1 to ask whether to write the selected mode into EEPROM.
 - * To cancel the process, press the Send to button and return to the initial display of the Emulation mode.

[Screen E1]

[
Function No. Display	Power LED	Scanner status									
8	ON	Blinks "o" (lower). Interval of blinking: 1.0 second (Switching interval of light ON and OFF is 0.5 second)									

6. Writing to EEPROM.

Pressing the Scan/Stop + Function buttons writes the information of the scanner of which setting has been changed into EEPROM.

While the data is being written into EEPROM, Screen E2 appears.

When writing process is complete successfully, Screen E3 appears.

* To cancel the process, press the Send to button and return to the initial display of the Emulation mode.

[Screen E2]

Function No. Display	Scanner status						
	Displays "L" without blinking.						

Data is being written into EEPROM. No button is available.

(1) When the process is terminated successfully:

[Screen E3]

Function No. Display	Scanner status						
9	Displays "o" (upper) without blinking.						

When data writing into EEPROM is complete successfully, Screen E3 appears.

(2) When the process is terminated abnormally:

[Screen E4]

[Sereen E.]						
Function	Scanner status					
No. Display						
	Displays "c" (lower) without blinking.					

If writing to EEPROM failed, the Screen E4 appears.

* When failed, start from step 1 again.

7. Restart the scanner.

If the process is terminated abnormally, turn off the power and back on again to restart the scanner.

Scanner configuration change for Emulation mode is complete now.

08	July 27, 09	K.Okada	a A.Miy	oshi	I.Fujiol	ka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	TITLE	fi-6140/fi-6240/fi-6130/fi-6230/fi-6 Maintenance Manual			
07	Nov.12, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	zai	I.Fujiol	ka Refe	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				D1DA025	IN DAY	VIC	CUST.
06	Mar.10, 08	K.Okada	a T.An	zai	I.Fujiol	ka Refe	to Revision	Record on	page 2.	No.	P1PA03540-B0XX/6			
Rev.	DATE	DESIGN	I CHE	CK .	APPR	. DES	CRIPTION			PFU LIMITED Page 257/			7/257	
Desig	n July 27,	2007 ł	K.Okada	CHE	ECK	K.Okada		APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU		rage	23	11231